

AD-A264 652



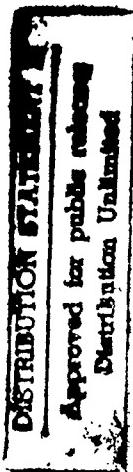
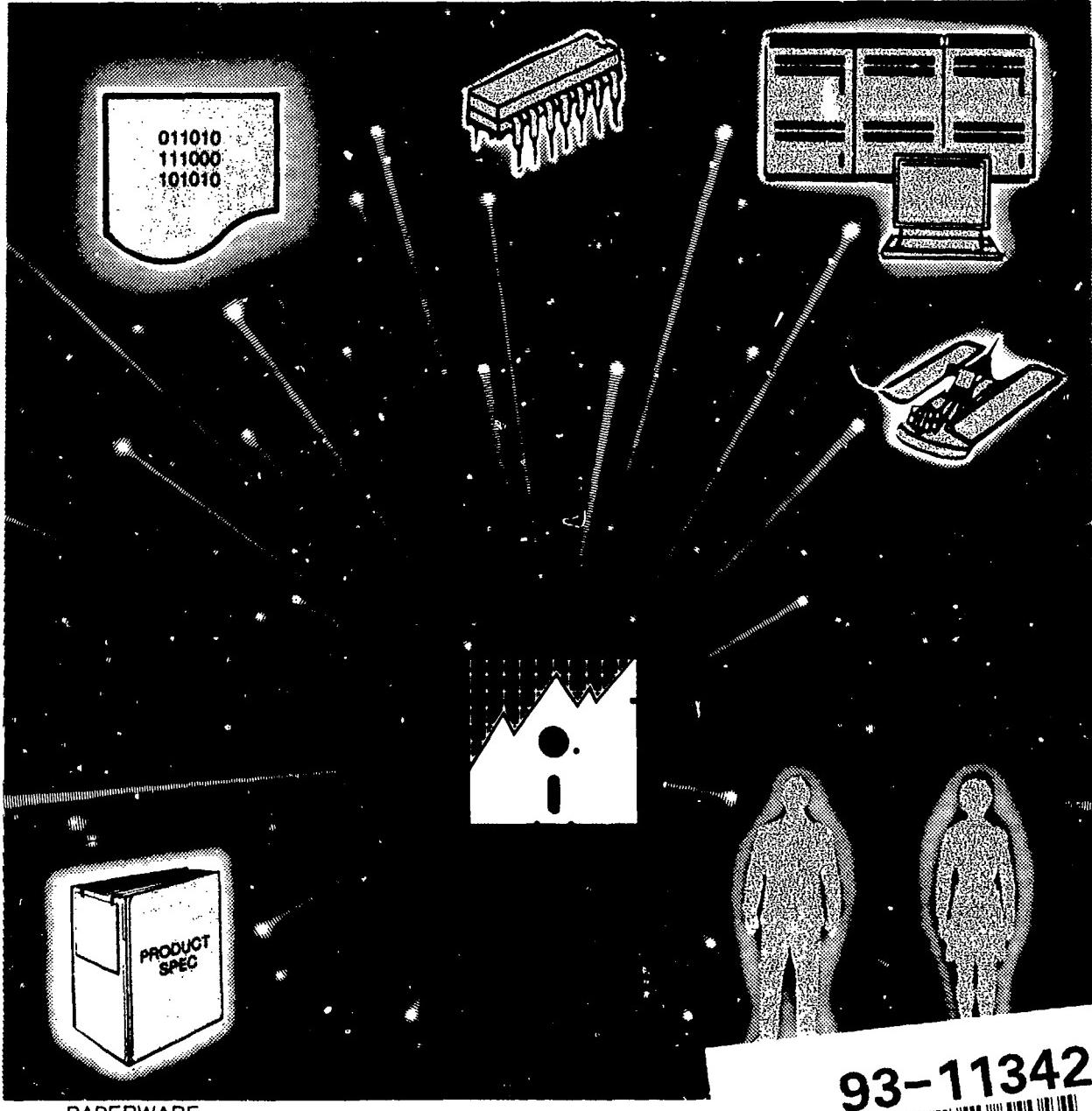
# MISSION CRITICAL COMPUTER RESOURCES MANAGEMENT GUIDE

① DTIC  
SELECTED  
MAY 21 1993  
S B D

SOFTWARE

FIRMWARE

HARDWARE



PAPERWARE

93-11342



# **MISSION CRITICAL COMPUTER RESOURCES MANAGEMENT GUIDE**

*1990*

DEFENSE SYSTEMS MANAGEMENT COLLEGE  
FT. BELVOIR, VA 22060-5426

# PREFACE

This document is one of a family of educational guides written from a Department of Defense (DOD) Perspective (i.e., non-service peculiar). These books are intended primarily for use in the courses at the Defense Systems Management College (DSMC) and secondarily as a desk reference for program and project management personnel. The books are written for current and potential DOD Acquisition Managers who have some familiarity with the basic terms and definitions of the acquisition process. It is intended to assist both the Government and industry personnel in executing their management responsibilities relative to the acquisition and support of defense systems. This family of technical guidebooks includes:

*Integrated Logistics Support Guide*; First Edition: May 1986

*Systems Engineering Management Guide*; Second Edition: Dec 1986

*Department of Defense Manufacturing Management Handbook for Program Managers*; Second Edition: July 1984

*Test and Evaluation Management Guide*, March 1988

*Acquisition Strategy Guide*, First Edition, July 1984

*Subcontracting Management Handbook*, First Edition, 1988

*A Program Office Guide to Technology Transfer*, November 1988

This guidebook was developed by the following members of the DSMC Technical Management Department staff:

Lt Col Israel I. Caro, USAF

Lt Col Ronald P. Higuera, USAF (Retired)

Cdr Frank R. Kockler, USN (Retired)

Mr. Sherwin J. Jacobson

Mr. Alan Roberts

In addition, Capt Leigh H. French, USAF, and Ms. Mary E. (Lyn) Dellinger, also from the Technical Management Department, provided valuable additions and comments to this edition.

RELEASE TO DTIC & NTIS USERS IN PAPER  
COPY AND MICROFICHE, AUTH: DSMC PRESS  
(MR BALL 703-805-2892) PER TELECON,  
21 MAY 93- CB

DTIC QUALITY INSPECTED 5

i

Quality Codes	
Dist	Avail and/or Special
A-1	

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

PREFACE	i	3.3.3 Firmware	3-5
<b>CHAPTER 1</b>			
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>			
INTRODUCTION	1-1	3.3.4 Peopleware	3-6
REFERENCES	1-2	3.3.5 Documentation	3-6
3.3.6 Development/Support Facilities			
3.4 COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE			
3.4.1 Bits and Bytes	3-8		
3.4.2 Instruction Set Architecture	3-8		
3.5 SOFTWARE LANGUAGES	3-9		
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>			
<b>INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTER RESOURCES</b>			
2.1 HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE	2-1	3.5.1 Machine Language	3-10
2.2 SOFTWARE IMPACT ON SYSTEM	2-2	3.5.2 Assembly Language	3-10
2.3 LIFE CYCLE COST TRENDS	2-3	3.5.3 High Order Language	3-11
2.4 EVOLUTION OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS	2-4	3.5.4 Application Generators (4GL)	3-12
2.5 WEAPON SYSTEM SOFTWARE	2-6	3.6 ADA	3-13
2.6 CURRENT STATE OF AFFAIRS	2-6	3.6.1 Ada Design	3-13
2.7 HISTORICAL CONTRIBUTORS	2-7	3.6.2 Ada Compilers	3-14
2.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE	2-8	3.6.3 Ada Language Features	3-15
2.9 REFERENCES	2-9	3.6.4 Ada Environment	3-16
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>			
<b>TECHNICAL FOUNDATIONS</b>			
3.1 INTRODUCTION	3-1	3.6.4.1 KAPSE	3-16
3.2 INSIDE THE COMPUTER	3-1	3.6.4.2 APSE	3-16
3.2.1 Input/Output Section	3-2	3.6.4.3 Ada Program Design Language	3-17
3.2.2 Central Processing Unit	3-2	3.7 Ada SURVIVAL	3-17
3.2.3 Memory Unit	3-3	3.8 REFERENCES	3-18
3.2.4 Computer Hardware	3-3	<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	
3.3 COMPUTER RESOURCES	3-4	<b>SOFTWARE ACQUISITION POLICY</b>	
3.3.1 Embedded Computer Hardware	3-5	4.1 INTRODUCTION	4-1
3.3.2 Software	3-5	4.2 BROOKS BILL	4-1
		4.3 DOD DIRECTIVE 5000.29	4-2
		4.4 WARNER-NUNN AMENDMENT	4-3
		4.5 MCCR STANDARDIZATION	4-3
		4.6 DOD DIRECTIVE 3405.2	4-4
		4.7 DOD DIRECTIVE 3405.1	4-5

**Table of Contents**

4.8 Ada PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE	4-5	6.4.2.2 White Box or Structural Testing	6-9
4.9 SOFTWARE ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY	4-6	6.4.2.3 Top-Down/Bottom-Up Testing	6-10
4.10 SOFTWARE SUPPORT	4-7	6.4.2.4 Software System Testing	6-11
4.11 TOP LEVEL SERVICE DIRECTIVES AND GUIDELINES	4-7	6.4.3 Integration Testing	6-12
4.12 SOFTWARE DATA RIGHTS	4-8	6.4.3.1 Hot Bench Testing	6-12
4.13 AUTOMATED INFORMATION SYSTEMS	4-9	6.4.3.2 DT&E/OT&E Testing	6-13
4.14 SUMMARY	4-9	6.5 TEST TOOLS	6-13
4.15 REFERENCES	4-10	6.6 DEBUGGING	6-14
		6.7 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE	6-15
		6.8 REFERENCES	6-16

**CHAPTER 5  
SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS**

5.1 INTRODUCTION	5-1
5.2 SUMMARY OF DEVELOPMENT ACTIVITIES	5-2
5.3 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS ANALYSIS AND DESIGN	5-3
5.3.1 System Design	5-4
5.4 SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT	5-5
5.4.1 Software Requirements Analysis	5-6
5.4.2 Preliminary Design	5-7
5.4.3 Detailed Design	5-8
5.4.4 Coding and CSU Testing	5-9
5.4.5 CSC Integration and Testing	5-10
5.4.6 CSCI Testing	5-10
5.5 SYSTEM INTEGRATION & TESTING	5-12
5.6 TAILORING	5-12
5.7 SUMMARY	5-14
5.8 REFERENCES	5-15

**CHAPTER 6  
SOFTWARE TEST AND EVALUATION**

6.1 TEST PLANNING	6-1
6.1.1 System Support Computer Resources	6-1
6.1.2 Mission Critical Computer Resources	6-2
6.2 COST OF SOFTWARE FIXES	6-5
6.3 SOURCES OF SOFTWARE ERRORS	6-6
6.4 TYPES OF TESTING	6-6
6.4.1 Human Testing	6-6
6.4.1.1 Inspections	6-6
6.4.1.2 Walk-throughs	6-7
6.4.1.3 Desk Checking	6-7
6.4.1.4 Peer Ratings	6-7
6.4.1.5 Design Reviews	6-7
6.4.1.6 Benefits of Human Testing	6-8
6.4.2 Software Only Testing	6-8
6.4.2.1 Black Box or Functional Testing	6-8

**CHAPTER 7  
POST DEPLOYMENT SOFTWARE SUPPORT**

7.1 BACKGROUND	7-1
7.2 PROBLEM AREAS	7-1
7.3 MANAGEMENT PERCEPTIONS	7-3
7.4 MANAGEMENT CONCERNS	7-4
7.5 WHAT IS PDSS?	7-5
7.6 SOFTWARE LIFE CYCLE CONSIDERATIONS	7-6
7.7 IMPROVING THE PDSS PROCESS	7-7
7.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE.	7-11
7.8 REFERENCES	7-11

**CHAPTER 8  
PLANNING FOR COMPUTER SOFTWARE**

8.1 INTRODUCTION	8-1
8.2 PLANS AND DOCUMENTATION	8-1
8.2.1 Program Management Plan (PMP)	8-1
8.2.2 Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP)	8-2
8.2.3 Integrated Logistics Support Plan (ILSP)	8-2
8.2.4 Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP)	8-3
8.3 ENGINEERING STUDIES	8-3
8.4 COMPUTER RESOURCES WORKING GROUP (CRWG)	8-4
8.5 SYSTEM SECURITY	8-6
8.6 CONTRACTUAL CONSIDERATIONS	8-6
8.6.1 Source Selection Plan (SSP)	8-6
8.6.2 Request for Proposal Package (RFP)	8-7
8.6.2.1 Requirements Specification(s)	8-7
8.6.2.2 Instructions to Offerors	8-7
8.6.2.3 Proposal Evaluation Criteria	8-8
8.6.2.4 Statement of Work (SOW)	8-8
8.6.2.5 Work Breakdown Structure	8-8
8.6.2.6 Deliverable Items	8-8
8.6.2.7 Special Contract Requirements	8-9
8.6.3 Source Selection Process	8-9
8.6.3.1 Draft RFP	8-9

8.6.3.2 Populating the Source Selection Organization	8-10	11.5.2 Establishing the Scope of IV&V	11-4
8.6.3.3 Evaluation Process	8-11	11.5.3 Defining the IV&V Tasks	11-4
8.6.3.4 Evaluating Offeror's Proposal	8-12	11.5.4 Estimating Software IV&V Costs	11-6
8.6.3.5 Software Development Capability Capacity Review	8-12	11.5.5 Selecting IV&V Agent	11-7
8.6.3.6 Software Capability Evaluation	8-14	11.6 REFERENCES	11-7
8.7 REFERENCES	8-16	<b>CHAPTER 12</b> <b>METRICS</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 9</b> <b>MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES</b>			
9.1 INTRODUCTION	9-1	12.1 INTRODUCTION	12-1
9.2 SOFTWARE ENGINEERING	9-2	12.2 TYPES OF METRICS	12-1
9.3 GUIDELINES AND RULES	9-3	12.2.1 Management Metrics	12-1
9.4 PROCESS CONTROL	9-5	12.2.2 Quality Metrics	12-2
9.5 REQUIREMENTS AND PROTOTYPING	9-8	12.2.3 Process Metrics	12-2
9.5.1 Specification Development Tools	9-8	12.3 METRICS APPLICATION	12-2
9.5.2 Rapid Prototyping	9-9	12.3.1 Pre-Solicitation	12-3
9.5.3 Incremental and Evolutionary Development	9-10	12.3.2 Government Model	12-3
9.6 SUMMARY	9-11	12.3.3 Resource Needs	12-3
9.7 REFERENCES	9-11	12.3.4 RFP and SOW	12-4
<b>CHAPTER 10</b> <b>SOFTWARE CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT</b>			
10.1 INTRODUCTION	10-1	12.3.5 Choice of Measures	12-5
10.2 CONFIGURATION IDENTIFICATION	10-2	12.3.6 Use of Models and Norms	12-5
10.3 CONFIGURATION CONTROL	10-3	12.3.7 Process Maturity	12-5
10.3.1 Interface Control	10-5	12.3.8 Negotiation	12-5
10.3.2 Baseline Management	10-6	12.3.9 Contract Monitoring	12-6
10.3.3 Configuration Control Board	10-7	12.3.10 Adjustments and Refinements	12-6
10.3.4 Software Configuration Review Board	10-7	12.4 PROGRAM MANAGER'S METRICS	12-6
10.3.5 Configuration Control Process	10-9	12.4.1 Software Size and Cost Status	12-7
10.4 CONFIGURATION STATUS ACCOUNTING	10-10	12.4.2 Manpower Application Status	12-8
10.4.1 Software Development Library	10-10	12.4.3 Cost and Schedule Status	12-8
10.4.2 Software Development Folder	10-11	12.4.4 Resource Margins	12-9
10.5 CONFIGURATION AUDITS	10-11	12.4.5 Quantitative Software Specification Status	12-10
10.7 SUMMARY	10-12	12.4.6 Design/Development Status	12-10
10.8 REFERENCES	10-12	12.4.7 Defects/Faults/Errors/Fixes	12-11
<b>CHAPTER 11</b> <b>INDEPENDENT VERIFICATION &amp; VALIDATION</b>			
11.1 BACKGROUND	11-1	12.4.8 Test Program Status	12-12
11.2 VERIFICATION	11-2	12.4.9 Software Problem Reports Status	12-12
11.3 VALIDATION	11-3	12.4.10 Delivery Status	12-13
11.4 CERTIFICATION	11-3	12.5 SUMMARY	12-13
11.5 THE IV&V PROCESS	11-3	12.6 REFERENCES	12-13
11.5.1 Determining the Need for IV&V	11-3	<b>CHAPTER 13</b> <b>EPILOGUE</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 12</b> <b>METRICS</b>			
13.1 INTRODUCTION	13-1	13.1 INTRODUCTION	13-1
13.2 SOFTWARE COST UNCERTAINTIES	13-3	13.2 SOFTWARE COST UNCERTAINTIES	13-3
13.3 SOFTWARE ACQUISITION CYCLE	13-4	13.3 SOFTWARE ACQUISITION CYCLE	13-4
13.4 PROTOTYPES	13-5	13.4 PROTOTYPES	13-5
13.5 SCHEDULES AND MANNING	13-6	13.5 SCHEDULES AND MANNING	13-6
13.6 TEAM SIZE AND MANAGEMENT	13-7	13.6 TEAM SIZE AND MANAGEMENT	13-7
13.7 ASSESSING PERFORMANCE	13-8	13.7 ASSESSING PERFORMANCE	13-8
13.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE	13-9	13.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE	13-9
13.9 REFERENCES	13-10	13.9 REFERENCES	13-10

**Table of Contents**

<b>APPENDICES</b>			
LIST OF ACRONYMS	A-1	SOURCE SELECTION PLAN	G-1
GLOSSARY OF TERMS	B-1	SOFTWARE DIDs	H-1
PMP OUTLINE	C-1	APPLICABLE SOFTWARE MANAGEMENT	
TEMP OUTLINE	D-1	REFERENCES	I-1
ILSP OUTLINE	E-1	INDEX	J-1
CRLCMP OUTLINE	F-1		

# CHAPTER 1

---

## INTRODUCTION

Mission Critical Computer Resources (MCCR) refers to the totality of computer hardware and computer software that is integral to a weapon system along with the associated personnel, documentation, supplies and services. A natural question to ask is "Why should a program manager be that interested in MCCR." The answer is fourfold. First, software for weapon systems is on the "critical path" of system development. If software development falls behind schedule, the entire weapon system development will also fall behind schedule. Second, software can produce development problems of sufficient magnitude to result in costly program overruns. It is not uncommon for software development costs to exceed initial budget estimates by as much as 50% to 100%. Third, the performance of modern weapon systems is largely dependent on the quality of their computer resources; the system is only as good as its software. Fourth, it is an established fact that, if the software development falls behind schedule, the development lead times cannot be shortened simply by applying more resour-

ces. Money can't fix the problem -- only time can [1]. Once a program falls behind, little can be done to save it!

Management of MCCR development cannot be ignored or delegated. If the program manager leaves all MCCR management considerations to the development contractor, there is the strong possibility that the software development will encounter significant difficulties. The management of MCCR development may be compared with piloting an aircraft. Without the proper application of the necessary control, it is extremely unlikely that the aircraft will safely reach the intended destination. Without the appropriate management directives, it is unlikely that MCCR development will result in a suitable product. There are no autopilots for MCCR development. Effective MCCR acquisition management, like piloting, is a difficult task but, with proper knowledge and care, not impossible [2]. This guide will only cover the basics by providing enough background to enable straight and level flight. Aerobatics

(i.e., unconventional developments) depend on greater mastery of the fundamentals, which is outside the scope of this guidebook.

The actual MCCR development will be accomplished by a system development contractor. On occasion, the "contractor" may be another DOD agency. The development contractor has the responsibility of delivering a software product that meets all contractual requirements. Unfortunately, it is not possible to specify precisely and completely in a contract all the characteristics of the final software product and its development process. Experience has shown that the difference between successful and unsuccessful development efforts is often the rigor and timeliness of the direction given to the con-

tractor by the procuring agency's program management organization [2].

## **REFERENCES**

1. Meinke, George H., *Airborne Software Acquisition Management...A Guide for New Software Managers*, Air Command and Staff College Report Number 82-1685, Air University, Maxwell AFB, AL 36112.
2. Rubey, Raymond J., *A Guide to the Management of Software in Weapon Systems*, Prepared by Softech for the U.S. Air Force Aeronautical Systems Division and the U.S. Army Aviation Systems Command, 2nd Edition, March 1985.

## CHAPTER 2

---

# INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTER RESOURCES

### 2.1 HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

The development of computer software as a recognized activity is less than 40 years old. During the infancy of digital computers (1950s) all software or computer programs were developed by engineers or scientists as an adjunct to their work with computers. In the early 1960s, computer technology was usually taught under the auspices of university or college electrical engineering departments. It wasn't until the late 1960s that computer science departments were being established as separate entities. The term "software engineering" was not coined until 1968 when the term was used as a theme of several workshops held in West Germany and Italy to address the growing problems associated with software development [1]. So unlike other disciplines, such as electrical engineering, software engineering is a relative newcomer. Because of this, its practitioners do not have at their disposal the wealth of time-tested practices, procedures and tools so readily available to its sister disciplines. In

circuit design, for example, an electrical engineer can use off-the-shelf components and modules with the necessary characteristics to build large portions of a system. Off-the-shelf components or modules are not widely available to the software engineer. Quite often attempts to use existing software lead to major problems if the designers are not careful when integrating the existing software into their design. Designers must fully understand all of the characteristics of existing software as well as its overall performance and reliability. Software engineering is still in its infancy. New innovations are being introduced every day, but they are more evolutionary in nature than revolutionary. Many of the problems associated with software engineering are due to the relative immaturity of the discipline. There is still too much art and craft and not enough engineering in software development; although the trend is definitely changing.

The introduction and growth of digital systems in the DOD parallel the introduction

and growth of digital systems in the commercial market place. In fact, the stringent requirements of military systems often spearheaded the development of computers and software throughout the industry, especially during the early years of computer development. In the early 1950s all weapon systems were analog and it wasn't until the mid-fifties that digital systems were introduced into weapon systems. During the sixties there was a rapid incorporation of digital systems with an almost exponential growth occurring in the seventies. Some of the reasons for this rapid growth were:

- (a) Advances in integrated circuits (ICs), the basic building blocks of electronic equipment and digital computers. ICs were being developed with ever increasing capabilities and an accompanying decrease in power requirements, size and cost.
- (b) The introduction of the microprocessor, which is essentially a computer on a chip, allowed designers to replace many pieces of hardware with a single component roughly the size of a postage stamp.
- (c) The ever increasing Soviet threat and the need to counter it in the face of decreasing defense budgets. This drove the services to build fewer but smarter and technically superior weapons relying more and more on computers and software.
- (d) The realization that software is inherently more flexible than hardware and better able to accommodate the ever changing threat.
- (e) The tremendous advances made in the commercial marketplace in computers and software.

Today, all weapon systems are dependent on computers and software. This phenomenal

growth of digital systems in aircraft, for example, is shown in Figure 2-1. In 1966 the FB-111 required an on-board computer memory of roughly 60,000 words but by 1988 the B-1B Bomber was approaching on-board computer memory requirements of about 2.5 million words. Current and future systems will greatly exceed these memory requirements with large scale software systems being the norm.

## 2.2 SOFTWARE IMPACT ON SYSTEM

What does the curve in Figure 2-1 tell us? If one were to use the analogy of constructing a brick wall, one can say that a 3000 square foot wall requires about three times as many bricks as a 1000 square foot wall. It is not necessarily more difficult to build, it just takes longer. Unfortunately this analogy breaks down when it comes to software.

The impact of software on system design and development is illustrated in Figure 2-2 [2]. The dashed lines represent the average influence of either software or hardware on system design and development while the solid lines on either side represent the maximum and minimum range of influence. It is

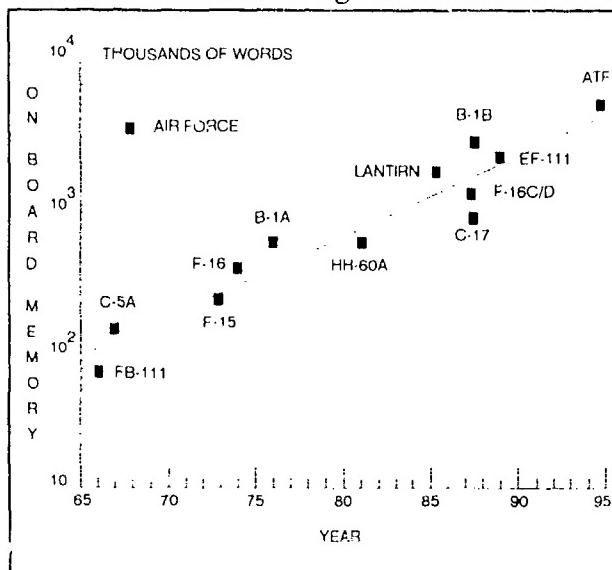
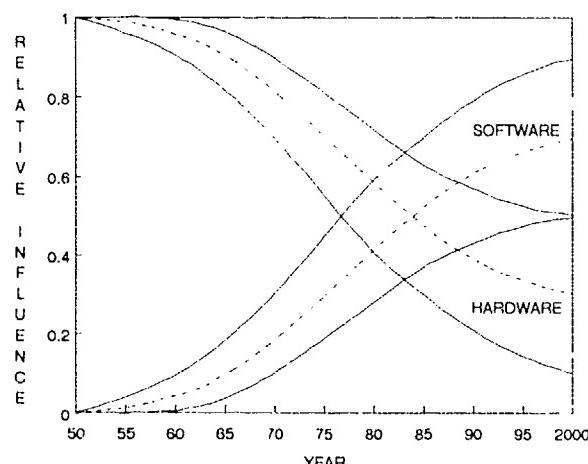


Fig. 2-1 Growth of Aircraft Systems



**Fig. 2-2 Software Impact on System Design/Development**

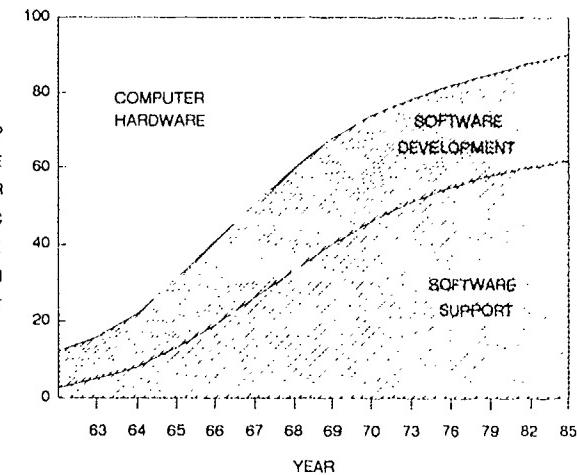
very clear that in 1950 software had no influence on weapon systems design. This is because these systems contained no digital hardware. By 1980, however, the relative influence of software on system design averaged about 50% with some systems being influenced by as much as 70% or as little as 30%. This means that software considerations affected overall system design and development about 50% of the time. System engineers could no longer make hardware design decisions without considering the software implications. As can be seen, the trend seems to be for an increasing role for software. What the figure shows is that software is no longer merely a part of the system; software has become a system in its own right and has assumed the integration function for the various subsystems of a weapon.

### 2.3 LIFE CYCLE COST TRENDS

Figure 2-2 implies that hardware has been traded for software. Why should that be a problem? The problem is one of cost as shown in Figure 2-3 [3]. This figure shows that over the last 30 years the cost of the software, as a percentage of total computer resources cost, has been growing by leaps and bounds whereas the associated computer hardware

has been decreasing by an equally dramatic percentage. A personal computer (PC) of today has more power than the large computers which were the workhorses of early space programs and it costs a mere fraction of its predecessor. In addition, a PC will sit on a corner of your desk while the early computers occupied large rooms and required thousands of watts of electricity and tons of air conditioning.

A word of caution is necessary. Figure 2-3 only refers to large, complex, military systems which are produced in limited numbers. In commercial products software is generally simpler and items are manufactured in very

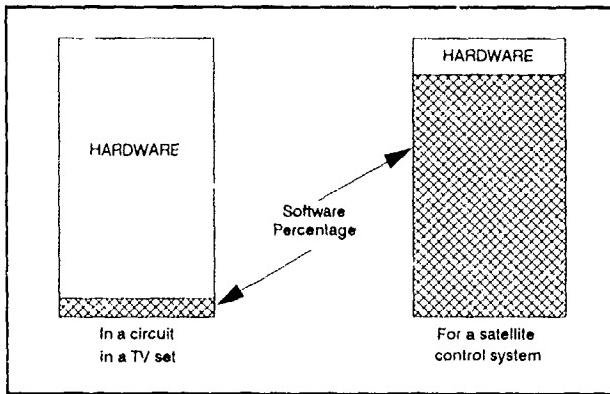


**Fig. 2-3 Life Cycle Cost Trends**

large numbers. Therefore the cost of software used in appliances, automobiles, toys, and other commercial products actually comprise but a small fraction of the total cost of these items [4]. This is depicted in Figure 2-4.

The decreasing size of computer hardware, along with their increasing capabilities, has resulted in an explosion of applications in our weapon systems. Software not only performs many of the functions previously performed by specialized hardware, it also performs many of the functions which would be impossible or impractical to perform with just dedicated hardware. This tremendous use of

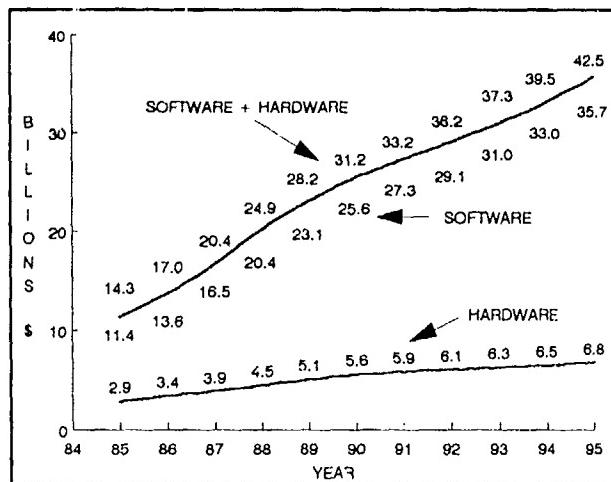
computers has come at a price. As Figure 2-3 shows, the ratio of computer hardware and software expenditures has changed from a ratio of 80% hardware and 20% software in 1960 to a ratio of 20% hardware and 80% software in 1980. There has been an equally dramatic increase in the costs associated with supporting the software once the system is delivered. The primary reason software development and support are so expensive is



**Fig. 2-4 Commercial Software**

that both functions are extremely labor intensive. It is an ironic fact that an industry which has provided the means for other segments of industry to automate, has itself failed to automate. There are very few machines and computer software that will automatically generate computer programs directly from a set of requirements. Those that exist are limited to very special applications.

The cost of DOD software is immense as can be seen from the chart in Figure 2-5. According to this Electronics Industries Association study [5], by the year 1990 the cost of software alone will be approximately \$25.6 billion. To put that figure in perspective, the total price tag for the B-1B Bomber fleet was around \$20 billion in 1981 dollars. That included 100 aircraft, the initial spares, the weapon system crew and maintenance trainers and the initial logistics support. The DOD could greatly increase the strategic bomber fleet, for the amount of money being spent on software today.

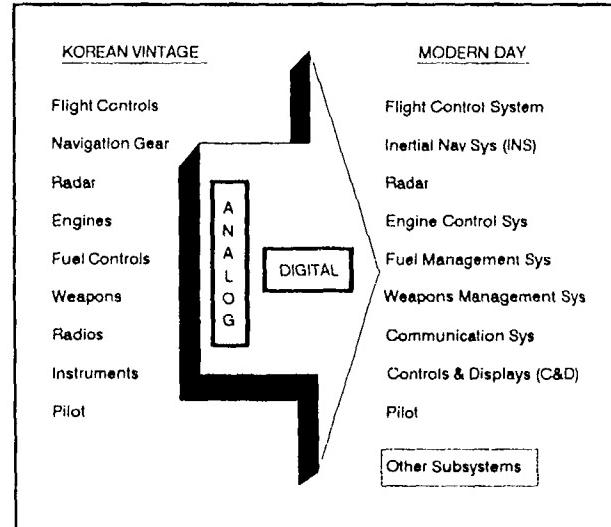


**Fig. 2-5 DoD Embedded Computer Market**

In contrast, the amount of money being spent on computer hardware has barely increased. When one considers that computer hardware is more powerful today than ever before, the cost for comparable performance has actually decreased immensely. Many factors have contributed to the decreasing cost of computer hardware but certainly automation has been a major contributor. Unfortunately it still requires a person to program a computer and programmers and other software specialists are expensive.

## 2.4 EVOLUTION OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS

If one were to make a comparison of Korean War vintage aircraft with modern day aircraft,



**Fig. 2-6 Evolution of Fighter Aircraft**

one realizes that both aircraft contain the same types of functional systems (Figure 2-6). A Korean War vintage aircraft contained flight controls, navigational gear, radar, etc. A modern day aircraft has the same type of systems except it now has a flight control system, an inertial navigation system or INS, a radar, etc. Let's examine some of these systems in greater detail.

A 1952 F-86 Sabre, for example, had a stick which was physically attached to mechanical linkages. These in turn were attached to the various hydraulic actuators and control surfaces such as elevators. When a pilot moved the stick, there would be an accompanying movement of the control surfaces because of the mechanical connection. The amount of force required to move the stick depended on how fast the aircraft was flying and its attitude. Contrast this with the latest version of the F-16 where the mechanical linkages have been replaced with electrical wires and motors. Movement of the stick creates an electrical signal which travels down the wires and activates the motors to physically move a control surface. There may also be two or more wires to provide redundancy and, since there is no feedback from mechanical linkages, a means to artificially give the pilot "a feel" for moving the control surfaces.

All of this is done with modern computers. The signals traveling down the wire are digital in nature and the redundancy checks and the artificial "feel" are all controlled by digital computers. Furthermore, the computer gives the flight control system the ability to "fly" the aircraft in ways not possible if a pilot were the controlling element. The X-29, the forward swept-wing experimental aircraft, would be virtually impossible for a pilot to fly without the complex computer dependent flight control system. The movement of the stick allows the pilot to indicate where he wants the

aircraft to go, but the computer actually flies the airplane.

An F-86, for example, carried navigational gear on board to allow the pilot to find his way to his destination. This consisted of a magnetic compass, an altimeter for altitude indication and perhaps some kind of radio direction finding equipment. With this navigational gear the pilot was able to navigate using dead reckoning techniques. Today we have an Inertial Navigation System (INS) comprised of gyroscopes, accelerometers, and computers to perform the same function. The INS is aligned before takeoff and it allows the pilot to accurately navigate from one point to another. This is only possible because of the computer. Using a known model of the error sources within the INS, the computer uses a mathematical technique known as Kalman Filtering to keep track of the aircraft's exact position over time.

The Korean War vintage cockpit, packed full of instruments, has been replaced with a cockpit containing just a few instruments and controls and display screens. Any information required by the pilot is simply displayed on the screens at the push of a button, anything from attitude indications to the status of weapons. They are all under the control of computers. Furthermore, there are now new subsystems that would not be possible without digital systems: diagnostic systems that can display the health of all the major subsystems and "expert systems" that provide the pilot with information on the various options available during a particular mission.

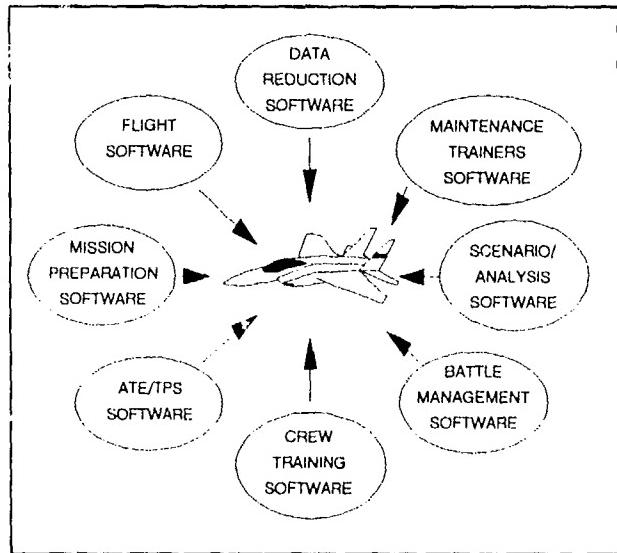
In summary, one can say that computers and software have introduced a whole new dimension to our weapon systems; improved system performance; become an aid to the decision making process; expanded the capabilities of the human operator and in many cases

replaced the human operator. In short, they have dramatically enlarged the performance envelope of weapon systems far beyond what was possible less than 30 years ago.

Without modern computers and the associated software, modern weapon systems would not exist. Weapon systems have evolved from systems where computers played a very minor role to systems where their very existence depends entirely on computers.

## 2.5 WEAPON SYSTEM SOFTWARE

The discussions so far have centered on the computers and the software that are embedded in a weapon system and are an integral part of that system. There is, however, a whole host of software associated with every weapon system (Figure 2-7) that is not embedded in the system but is, nevertheless, absolutely essential.



**Fig. 2-7 Weapon System Software**

The software that has been discussed so far is referred to as flight software but a wealth of other software is required to support a weapon system. During ground and flight testing, extensive data reduction computers and software are required to aid in the analysis

of literally millions of data points generated in a major test program.

In order to train the various maintenance crews, various subsystem trainers must be developed many of which require literally hundreds of thousands of lines of code and numerous computers, both large and small. Two examples are avionics maintenance trainers and weapons load trainers. Operational analysis personnel require very large scenario software to perform tactics and war planning. Extensive and complex battle management software may be required to develop mission planning. Operational crews usually train on large software intensive weapon system trainers whose functions are dependent on millions of lines of software instructions. For logistics support of electronic equipment, automatic test equipment (ATE) and its associated software must be developed along with hundreds of software packages called Test Program Sets (TPSs). TPSs allow technicians to isolate and repair failed electronic components. Lastly, mission preparation software may also be required for use by operational crews in planning and carrying out their missions.

## 2.6 CURRENT STATE OF AFFAIRS

Examination of the current state of affairs with military weapon systems reveals some very unpleasant facts:

(a) Most new systems are extremely complex. This is due to a combination of several factors:

- extremely demanding requirements, which tend to drive designers towards complex solutions;
- tight schedules and even tighter budgets, which tend to negate elegant and simpler solutions;

- and, unfortunately, too many contractors not fully skilled in software engineering techniques tend to populate the "lowest bidder" category. These contractors seem to thrive under our current procurement laws and regulations.

(b) Digital systems are now the heart and soul of all new weapon systems. The flexibility offered by digital systems cannot be remotely approached by analog systems. This trend will continue for the foreseeable future.

(c) Most systems are delivered late, have cost overruns, rarely meet performance requirements upon initial delivery and are often ridiculously expensive to maintain.

It would be very unfair to blame all of these unpleasant facts just on digital systems and software, but it is generally recognized that software is a major contributor, and often the only contributor, to these problems. Software has become the Achilles heel of weapon systems. Not only is it in the critical path of the system development process but system performance is dependent on the system software.

## 2.7 HISTORICAL CONTRIBUTORS

One of the major contributors to the problems associated with software development has been loose and very often nonexistent management oversight. Since most program managers know little or nothing about software, they concentrate their efforts on hardware or system issues and often leave software management to managers who are not always part of the mainstream decision making process. They get involved only when software starts affecting the overall schedule and by then it is usually too late. This is changing because a policy of "benign neglect" is no longer acceptable.

Another problem is that some software managers lack relevant experience. This is a universal problem with no quick solutions in sight. Experienced software managers within the government are a scarce commodity. Industry seems to lure the good ones away and those that remain and rise to management positions are not necessarily the most experienced.

A major problem that has plagued the DOD in the past has been the uneven application of standards and, in some cases, the lack of standards. As for the former, too often a contract simply calls out all the applicable standards without regard to the fact that many of them are contradictory or even unnecessary. All standards and regulations should be tailored for each program. It wasn't until recently, that common programming standards were mandated for all the services.

Throughout the 1960s and 1970s the total number of programming languages used for military systems numbered in the hundreds and none of them were compatible with each other. Most systems used their own languages and their own computers so that transportability across systems was nonexistent. To a great extent many systems still suffer from this problem.

Another contributor to the software problem has been the almost endemic lack of a disciplined engineering approach to software development. The better developers have the necessary discipline to do a good job but even they encounter problems. Unfortunately, many software developers only pay lip service to using modern software development methodologies such as top-down structured design, object-oriented design (OOD), incremental development, software metrics, stringent configuration management practices, and integrated software engineering en-

vironments. They may write convincing proposals but they can't always deliver. On the government side, the problem is compounded when the contractor is not forced to follow a disciplined engineering approach. Too often, engineering discipline is sacrificed to those holiest of sacred cows--schedule and cost.

Somewhat related is the fact that competent software developers are not sufficient in numbers to satisfy the demands of both the military and the civilian market place. There are more software projects than there are competent software developers, so the less skillful fill the vacuum.

Lastly one must remember that the software that is developed for weapon systems is the most difficult and most challenging type of software. Some of the reasons for this difficulty are the following:

(a) Most weapon systems have real-time requirements which add an additional level of complexity. The software has to respond almost instantaneously and correctly, in spite of noise and other types of interference that can seriously degrade a system.

(b) Most weapon systems have a requirement for fault-free operation or some level of fault tolerance. This adds additional overhead to the software since more checks and redundant capabilities have to be added. These requirements run counter to the requirements for speed, simplicity, and real-time response.

(c) Because of the complexity, many software developments stretch over periods of three to five years. During this time there is usually significant personnel turnover, especially in the government. This results in loss of continuity and provides ample opportunity for

new "shakers and movers" to express their leadership and managerial "styles". It also provides plenty of time for Congress to cut, slice, batter and reap havoc with the budget. Although this is also true for hardware, it has a more severe impact on software development.

(d) Requirements are usually not finalized until late in the development cycle. This is partly due to the evolving threat and partly due to the long development period. The end result is that designers are shooting at a moving target.

(e) No human endeavor is entirely free of politics. The program office is no exception. A program manager must not only deal with management and technical problems but also learn to navigate the more dangerous waters of internal and external politics.

(f) Compounding the problem even further is the sad reality that computer resources technology is rapidly changing. Technology that is state-of-the-art at the beginning of a major weapon system development is often obsolete by the time the system is fielded. A program manager must be able to properly balance the risk associated with using technology that is at the cutting edge, but which is not yet fully proven, with the risks associated with using more proven but less capable technology.

## 2.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE

Program managers, as well as software personnel, need to be educated and trained. The Program Managers Course at the Defense Systems Management College is an example of this type of training. This education and training must be made available to all program office personnel. Even if one is not directly involved with software, that person should still have an appreciation for the dif-

ficulties involved since all future hardware development will be impacted by software. Program managers must allow their software personnel to attend courses and seminars so that they can better learn the process. This training is especially valuable for junior and middle level software managers and engineers, many of who have little or no formal training in software engineering. Program managers must never use the excuse that "we are too busy to let them go now." They will always be too busy. Make the time and let program personnel attend training classes.

All program personnel must lose their fear of software. There is nothing magical about computers and software as long as time is taken to learn at least some of the basics. Software and computer illiteracy can no longer be tolerated in a program office.

Software and hardware standards should be intelligently applied. They should be scrutinized and tailored to a specific program. Most standards are written to cover the entire waterfront and particular programs only deal with a portion of that waterfront. Failure to do so will create confusion and will eventually impact those sacred cows--schedule and costs.

From day one, program managers must pay attention to software and ensure that program personnel are doing the job of enforcing the developer to follow a disciplined process. The chief software person must be made visible by having to report to the program manager on a weekly basis and on a daily basis during critical periods. This person should be totally aware of all of the developer's major activities and have the facts readily available.

The program manager must make absolutely sure that program personnel actually read and critically evaluate all software documents

submitted by the developer. If they are rubber-stamping documents, they should be replaced. Reviews such as Preliminary Design Reviews (PDRs) and Critical Design Reviews (CDRs) should be delayed until the proper documents have been thoroughly reviewed. A developer should not be allowed to slip through a gate until it has satisfied all the requirements for going through that gate; or until everyone is fully aware of the risks involved by proceeding.

As will be seen in a later section of this guide, early and thorough planning is the only way that the software problems can be minimized. This planning starts during the concept exploration/definition phase and continues to some degree until the system is no longer used.

There are no magical solutions! Good software development requires extensive planning and thorough vigilance. There are no short cuts or cookbook solutions!

## 2.9 REFERENCES

1. Fairley, Richard E., *Software Engineering Concepts*, Tyngsboro, Mass.: McGraw Hill Book Co., 1985.
2. Grove, H. Mark, "DoD Policy for Acquisition of Embedded Computer Resources," *Concepts, The Journal of Defense Systems Acquisition Management*, Autumn 1982, Volume 5, Number 4.
3. Boehm, Barry, "Software Engineering," *IEEE Transactions on Computers*, Vol. C-25, No. 12, December 1976.
4. Fox, Joseph M., *Software and Its Development*, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1982

5. Electronics Industries Association, *The Military Market: Perspectives on Future Opportunities*, Sponsored by the Requirements Committee, Government Division, Nov 1985.
6. Seidman, Arthur H. and Flores Ivan, Ed., *The Handbook of Computers and Computing*, New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Company Inc., 1984.

# CHAPTER 3

---

## TECHNICAL FOUNDATIONS

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

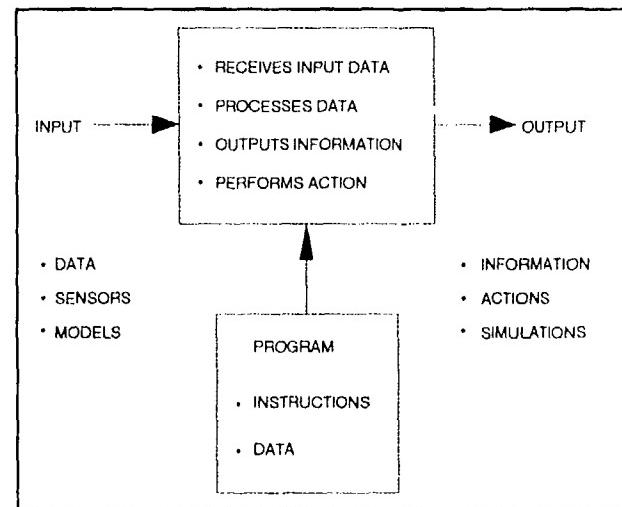
This chapter addresses the basics of computer hardware and software by describing how a computer works and by defining the concepts of computer programs and languages. These basics are intended to provide the uninitiated with an understanding and appreciation for why a software development project must follow a logical and proven process.

This chapter also provides a brief technical description of the Ada Programming Language and a brief explanation of its technical and management benefits.

### 3.2 INSIDE THE COMPUTER

In general terms, a computer is a device which receives or "senses" data through input devices, processes that data and provides an output in the form of information or an action. This is illustrated in Figure 3-1. Incoming data can originate from a human operator, external sensors, or computer models which simulate the external environment.

The incoming data is processed by a computer program which is a set of instructions and data that were previously loaded and stored in the computer. The details of how these instructions and data are generated and stored in the computer are discussed later in this chapter.



**Fig. 3-1 Computer Definition**

Once the data has been processed, the computer provides information to a human operator; performs a particular action such as

turning on an actuator or updating a data base; or provides processed data to a computer simulation as part of its own input data.

The major components of a computer are the input and output (I/O) section, the central processing unit (CPU) and the memory unit as depicted in Figure 3-2.

### 3.2.1 Input/Output Section

For the computer to be a useful device, it must be able to communicate with people or devices outside itself. This is accomplished through input and output devices. Examples of input devices are terminals, keyboards, and sensors such as navigational instruments, altimeters, fuel level sensors, and temperature sensors. Examples of output devices include printers, displays, actuators, and electro-mechanical devices that are part of the weapon system. Sometimes the two functions are combined as they are on a terminal which includes a display screen and a keyboard assembled into a single unit. In short, it is the computer I/O that provides the interface to the rest of the system.

### 3.2.2 Central Processing Unit

The central processing unit is the brain of the computer. It is in the CPU where the actual processing or computations take place. The processing is based on the computer program or set of instructions which have been stored in the computer's memory.

As an example of the type of processing to be performed by a CPU, consider an aircraft avionics system which uses an inertial platform and a computer program stored in memory to perform the navigational function. An inertial platform is a device that utilizes gyroscopes to maintain a fixed attitude with respect to some external reference, usually

the stars, and accelerometers for measuring acceleration. The process of navigation would involve the following: **Step 1:** Begin the process. This will require some housekeeping and initialization to tell the computer the initial starting position and the direction in which the platform is pointing. **Step 2:** Obtain input data from the navigational sensors, i.e., the accelerometer outputs and the gyroscopic attitude output. **Step 3:** Compute current position and velocity based on the internally stored program. **Step 4:** Output this information to the operator and/or guidance system. This process will be repeated at regular intervals to provide a continuous flow of navigational information. For the output to be timely, the process needs to occur in real-time.

The CPU is in control during the entire time it is executing these instructions. Step 3 above processed the data received from the platform to produce the necessary information. In this case, the computation involved determining the change in direction relative to the referenced stable platform and calculating the velocity by numerically integrating the acceleration over time. By performing this process in real-time and providing a continuous output, the aircraft's position and velocity will be known at all times

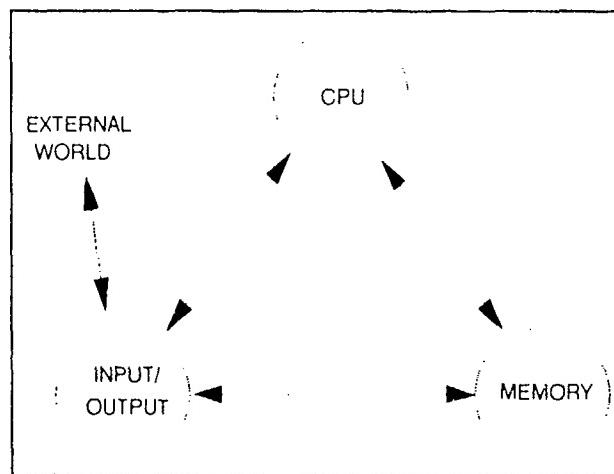


Fig. 3-2 Computer Components

### 3.2.3 Memory Unit

The third major component of the computer is the memory unit. One of the important aspects of a computer is the ability to store in its memory the instructions and data required for the computer to perform its functions. By storing different instructions and data, the computer can perform many different tasks within the bounds imposed by the system's design and implementation. In the previous example, a set of instructions stored in memory allowed the computer to perform navigational computations. Using a different set of instructions, the computer could be used to determine the status of the hardware components of the entire system. This assumes that the appropriate input data is provided by the various subsystems. The computer has the capability to perform these functions and many more. This ability to store and

execute programs provides considerable power. During execution of a program, the computer fetches an instruction out of memory, performs that instruction and then steps to the next instruction. This continues until all the instructions have been performed. The main or internal memory is located within the computer, but memory can also be located externally in memory devices such as fixed disks, or tape drives. Internal memory is limited in capacity so external devices, which have more capacity, are used for long term storage of large programs and data.

### 3.2.4 Computer Hardware

Computer hardware comes in many shapes and sizes. Figure 3-3 shows Texas Instruments' MIL-STD-1750A computer, which is used in integrated avionics applica-

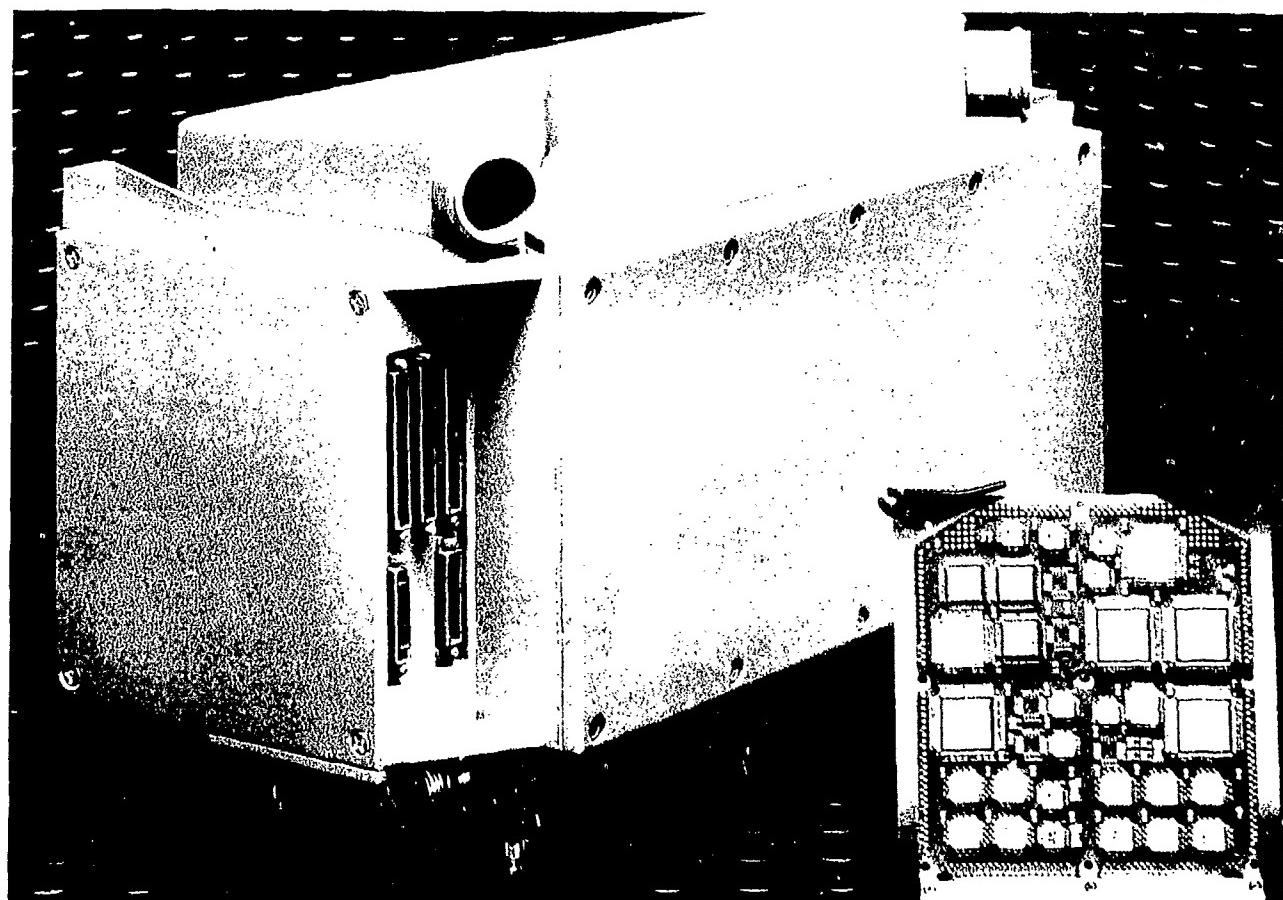


Fig. 3-3 TI's MIL-STD-1750 Military Computer

tions such as the Navy's Advanced Tactical Aircraft (ATA), the Air Force's Advanced Tactical Fighter (ATF), and the Army's Abrams M1MA Tank. About the size of a bread box, its performance is comparable to the original IBM personal computer.

A much larger system is shown in Figure 3-4. This system is IBM's Reduced Instruction Set

Architecture (RISC) System/6000 POWERstation 320 computer and it is much more powerful and larger than the MIL-STD-1750A computer.

### 3.3 COMPUTER RESOURCES

Now that the computer basics have been introduced, it is time to address the bigger pic-

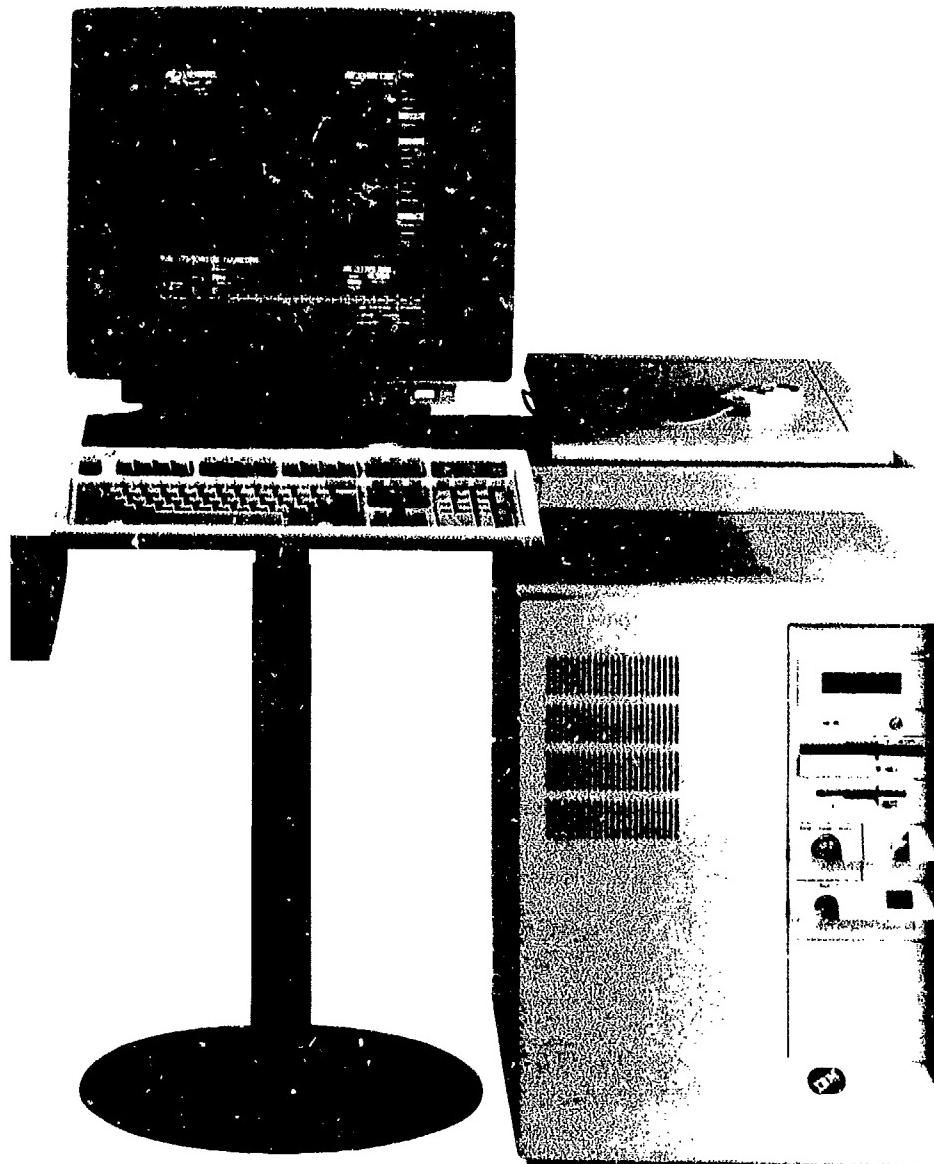
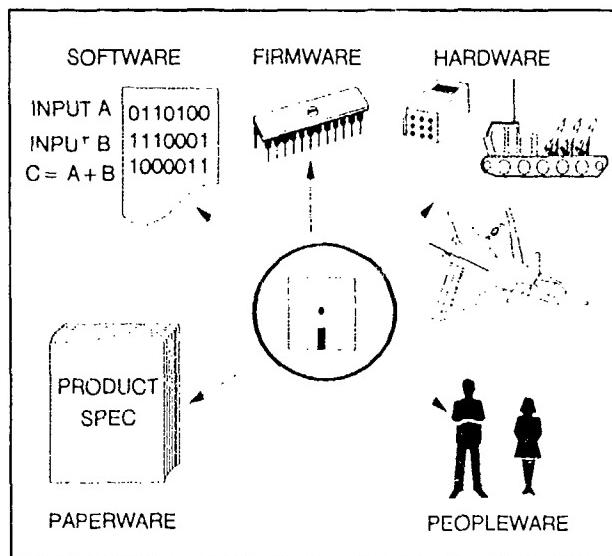


Fig. 3-4 IBM RISC System/6000 Computer

ture of what is referred to as computer resources. All too often important aspects of a software project are arbitrarily relegated to positions of insignificance because their importance is not understood and, therefore, receive little or no program management attention until it is too late. To preclude this from happening, program managers (PMs)



**Fig. 3-5 Computer Resources**

must be familiar with all the components that make up and support a computer system. Only by fully understanding all the pieces of the puzzle, can PMs properly manage computer resources. This doesn't mean that PMs must have detailed knowledge of a computer processor's operation or have the ability to generate software code for projects. PMs should, however, have a basic understanding of computer resources and know how these resources fit into the overall weapon system architecture. The components of computer resources are shown in Figure 3-5.

### 3.3.1 Embedded Computer Hardware

In weapon systems, the program manager needs to be concerned with mission critical computer resources as defined in Chapter 2. Generally, a weapon system is designed with a special purpose computer because of

weight, power, application, or other technical considerations. The special purpose computer or processor may take the form of a "blackbox", an assembly of cards, or even a single card which is embedded in the system. This means that the computer is an integral part of the weapon system.

With today's Very High Speed Integrated Circuit (VHSIC) technology, a computer can be built on a single integrated circuit, a piece of silicon not much larger than a 1/4 by 1/4 inch square. To the untrained eye, an embedded computer system may be physically indistinguishable from the rest of the system. An example would be a computer used in the flight control system of an air-to-air missile or the navigational computer in a satellite.

### 3.3.2 Software

Software is defined by the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) as the set of instructions and data that are executed in a computer. This definition clearly distinguishes data items, such as documentation and specifications that are called out in the contract, from the deliverable software such as an operational flight program. Although some common definitions of software often include all the documentation as well, the DOD definition includes only the executable form of the instructions and data. Software is not something you can touch or feel. It is intangible; it has no mass, no volume, no color, no odor, no physical properties. It can only be represented by a listing or other forms of documentation. Software will be addressed in greater detail later in this chapter.

### 3.3.3 Firmware

The evolution of computer hardware has also brought about the marriage of hardware and software in a combination called firmware.

Firmware is defined as software that has been implemented in hardware using memory devices such as read only memory (ROM), programmable ROM (PROM), erasable PROM (EPROM), and electrically erasable PROM devices (EEPROM). These devices, and other similar devices which are generically referred to as integrated circuits (ICs), allow software to be permanently implemented and not easily changed. In order to change software implemented in firmware, one of two actions must be taken. If the firmware is ROM or PROM, then these memories or ICs must be physically removed from a circuit card and replaced with other ROMs or PROMs that have been programmed with the new software. If the firmware is EPROM, then the ICs must be removed, reprogrammed, and reinstalled. The EEPROM can be altered in circuit but this requires special additional equipment or circuitry. The EPROM is usually altered using an ultra-violet light source and the EEPROM can be altered using electrical means.

Because of the difficulty encountered in changing software that has been implemented in firmware, firmware is used only in applications that:

**Require Speed** - Many signal processing applications, such as electronic warfare systems, must receive, analyze, categorize and jam radar signals from hostile threats almost instantaneously. They cannot tolerate the relatively slow processing speeds associated with general purpose computers. In these cases the various algorithms or programming steps are implemented in firmware in order to significantly increase the processing speed.

**Require protection from unauthorized tampering or alterations** - The software required to run a computer is oftentimes stored in firmware. By using these devices, com-

puter manufacturers preclude programmers from inadvertently changing the resident software, commonly referred to as the operating system software, and possibly causing the computer to fail or to operate improperly.

**Require permanent software** - Programs that have been implemented in firmware are immediately available in memory and do not have to be loaded when the computer is first powered up. This also provides a form of protection from power failures. A thoroughly tested and stable program is a good candidate for firmware.

Firmware introduces an additional dimension to software. Because it is software, all the software configuration management practices also apply to firmware. Once the software is implemented in firmware, however, the ICs are managed as hardware configuration items. In order to provide for future support, a method must exist which traces the specific software version to a unique piece part.

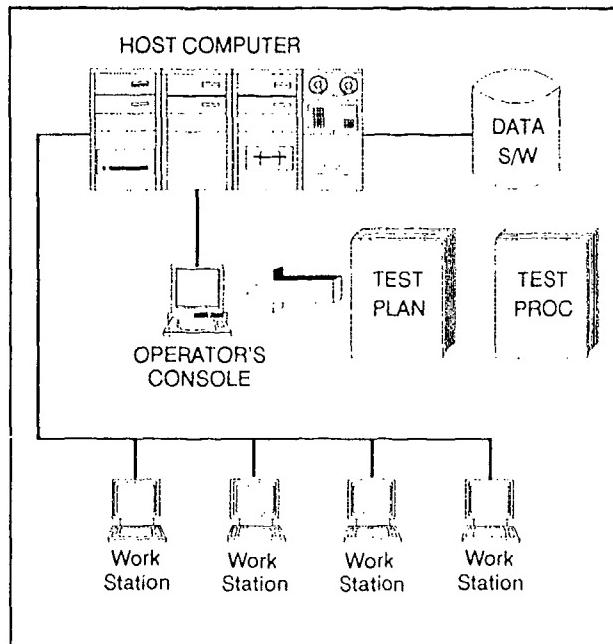
### 3.3.4 Peopleware

People are also an important part of the system. The program manager tries to satisfy the user's need through a reasonable system design, but it is the user and support personnel who are the ultimate judge of the delivered product's quality. This is why it is important that the program manager involve the user in defining requirements, in evaluating test results, and interpreting system interface requirements. Other chapters will address the importance of involving the user and support personnel in the development process.

### 3.3.5 Documentation

Because software development is largely an intellectual exercise, documentation is vital for communicating during the software

development and support phase. Documentation must be a logical by-product of the development process. As software development tools and computer programming languages become more sophisticated, documentation will become more and more of an automatic by-product of the development process. Until then, however, the program manager must insure that adequate documentation exists to accommodate



**Fig. 3-6 Support Facility**

development and follow-on support. It is important to remember that software is intangible, with no physical properties, and that documentation is the only means available for describing and keeping track of its development progress.

### 3.3.6 Development/Support Facilities

A computer system consists of hardware, software, firmware, peopleware, and paperware as indicated in Figure 3-5. All these elements, which are brought together in a support facility, must be available during the development and support phases of the weapon system. The support facility is an important aspect of computer resources. It in-

cludes not only the physical property, such as the building, host computers, and utilities, but also the supporting software documentation needed for development and support. A software development facility and a software support facility are virtually identical since the same software and hardware tools are required for both. The facility may consist of a host computer, which may be either a large mainframe computer or a minicomputer, along with terminals or work stations for the programmers, analysts, testers, librarian, and other personnel (Figure 3-6). The facility may also be connected to other similar facilities through local area networks (LANs). In order to perform software development and support, several software programs are required. These programs include compilers, linkers, loaders, simulators, editors, and other development and management tools.

## 3.4 COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE

The computer can be thought of as a collection of hundreds of thousands of electrical switches. Each of these switches can be in one of two states, on or off. Since the switch has two states, the status of any one "witch" can be represented by a "0" or a "1", i.e., on = 1 and off = 0. The binary numbering system can be used to represent the state of these switches since it too has only two digits, 0 and 1. Instructions and data can therefore be represented by a string of 0s and 1s and by using the rules of Boolean logic, named after the English mathematician and logician George Boole. These switches are interconnected to build modern electronic computers. Modern computers, no matter how large or how small, perform the following basic types of operations or instructions:

### ARITHMETIC

add	multiply
subtract	divide

**LOGICAL**  
 AND            NOT  
 OR            EXCLUSIVE OR

**TRANSFER CONTROL**  
 branching    subroutines    loops

**DATA MOVEMENT**  
 load    store    move

**INPUT AND OUTPUT**  
 in            out

**SYSTEM**  
 HALT            interrupt

### 3.4.1 Bits and Bytes

In the binary numbering system a bit represents one digit, either a "0" or a "1". A word is a string of bits that represent instructions or data; the larger the string the more information it can represent. Any character can be represented by using "coding" techniques. One widely used technique is the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) which is used for encoding the alphabet, numbers, and other special characters. There are 128 characters in the ASCII set, while another widely used technique, the IBM set, has 256 characters. As an illustration, part of the ASCII alphabet and number coding scheme is shown in Figure 3-7.

Notice that the ASCII standard uses eight bits or digits to represent a character. This eight bit word length is commonly referred to as a BYTE and was usually the smallest word size in earlier computers, particularly in personal computers (PCs). The eight bit structure of PCs has been replaced by the 16 bit word, with 32 bit structures quickly taking their place. Large mainframes have always used larger word sizes such as 32 or 64 bit word lengths. The advantage of a larger word length is that

it contains more information in a single word and can access larger segments of stored data. A computer architecture is designed around a specific word size since the internal communication between the CPU, memory and I/O is dependent on the number of bits in a

CHARACTER	BINARY CODE	DECIMAL EQUIVALENT
0	00110000	48
1	00110001	49
2	00110010	50
3	00110011	51
A	01000001	65
B	01000010	66
C	01000011	67
D	01000100	68
E	01000101	69
F	01000110	70

Fig. 3-7 ASCII Alphabet (Partial)

word. For example, a computer that has an eight-bit architecture (8 bit buss) communicates eight bits at a time (in parallel) while a 16-bit machine communicates 16 bits at a time. This effectively doubles the throughput.

### 3.4.2 Instruction Set Architecture

The computer architecture and its internal logic structure are designed and implemented by the computer manufacturer to perform a finite and fixed set of instructions. A computer with a minimal set of instructions can perform the same computations as one with a larger set. The difference, however, may appear in the execution time and the sequence of instructions in the software program. Let's assume that a programmer is required to generate a computer program to perform a particular task. A program written for a machine with a large set of instructions will usually require fewer lines of machine instructions than a program written for a machine with a smaller set of instructions.

The difference in actual machine instruction sets is dependent on the manufacturer's objectives in design. Computers can be designed and optimized for specific applications. Some computers are designed to perform very rapid mathematical computations; others are designed to manipulate large amounts of data in a very efficient manner; and still others are designed with a very powerful graphics capability. No computer, however, can be built so that it can perform equally well in all applications. There is no industry standard for computer design and each manufacturer is free to design and target its machine for the application of its own choosing. This means that each computer has its own internal and fixed repertoire of instructions. This fixed set of instructions is called the computer's instruction set architecture (ISA) and in order to execute a computer program on a particular machine, that program must be specifically targeted or written for that machine's ISA. In other words, the binary instructions and data that make up a software program are different for computers with different ISAs. Instruction set architectures are the "blueprints" that describes the interface to the set of electronic hardware or circuitry to execute the different types of operations or instructions.

Word size is an important part of the computer architecture. Recall the earlier discussion on the communication of instructions and data within the machine. Part of the basic design is determining the internal signal communication paths. This internal communication is accomplished through the use of an electronic component called a buss. The buss provides parallel signal paths between the CPU, memory, and external devices. A computer will typically have two busses as shown in Figure 3-8. The design architecture will also determine the internal communication within a computer. A computer that has a 16-

bit architecture communicates internally 16 bits at a time (in parallel). A computer that has a 32 bit architecture communicates 32 bits at a time. This effectively gives the computer with 32 bits a greater throughput or faster execution capability.

Although there are no official standards for commercial hardware designs and computer architectures, the surge of sales in personal computers has made *de facto* standards of some Intel and Motorola computer architectures. Within the DOD, however, there does exist a standard for ISA, namely MIL-STD-1750A. This standard has been used successfully in both Air Force and Navy programs but its application is usually limited to airborne and embedded computer applications. This is because this ISA was initially designed by the Air Force in the 1970s around a 16-bit word size. It was specifically intended for airborne applications and it has a limited memory capacity. Today's rapidly evolving computer technology is quickly making MIL-STD-1750A ISA obsolete. The advantage of standard ISAs is portability of executable software.

### 3.5 SOFTWARE LANGUAGES

Software languages are the vocabulary or lexicon used to instruct computers on the func-

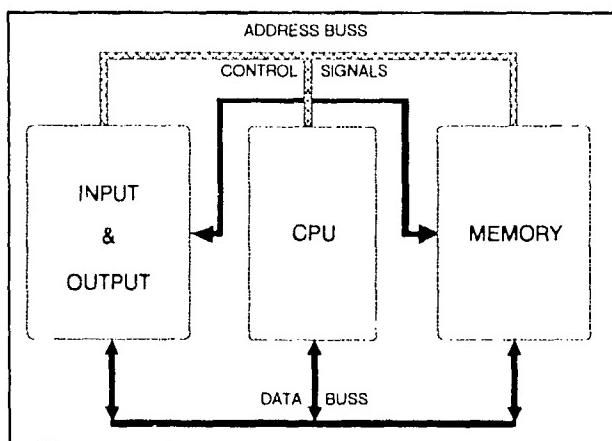


Fig. 3-8 Computer Busses

tions they will perform. Software languages can be categorized into four groups: machine languages, assembly languages, higher order languages, and application generators. Software languages are also referred to by generation, with machine language being the first generation and application generators being the fourth generation languages (4GLs).

### 3.5.1 Machine Language

Machine language is the most primitive and basic of all the languages and the only language that can be used in a computer. It is written in binary code and provides the machine the instructions it is to execute. The binary coded words are those words that were designed for the machine's ISA. Programming in machine language, forces the programmer to structure the problem solving steps in the same way the machine will execute them. When computers were first introduced, that was exactly how engineers constructed their computer programs. Since data, instructions, and memory locations are represented by 0s and 1s (See Figure 3-9), this method is very tedious and error prone and becomes nearly impossible for practical problems. In addition, because every com-

11010000	00001100	00000101	11000000
01010000	11010000	11000000	00111110
01000001	11010000	11000000	00111010
01011000	01100000	11000000	10000010
01000001	10110000	00000000	00000000
01000001	00110000	00000000	10000110
01011010	10110011	00000000	00000000
01000001	00110011	00000000	00000100
01000110	01100000	11000000	00010100
01011100	10100000	11000000	10100010
01011101	10100000	11000000	10000010
11100001	01100000	00000000	00000000
01011000	11010000	11000000	00111110
10011000	11101100	11010000	00001100
00000111	11111110		
00000000	00000000	00000000	00010000
00000000	00000000	00000000	00100000
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000110
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000001

Fig. 3-9 Binary Object Code

puter has its own unique machine language and, because of this, machine language programs are not transferable between different type machines.

### 3.5.2 Assembly Language

Early in the history of computer development, engineers learned to use the power of the computer to assist in the programming process. Instead of directly using binary code, the engineer developed a shorthand notational language that was easier to understand. This notational language was called assembly language. Assembly language represents each instruction with a mnemonic expression and data is represented by its equivalent decimal number. The engineer or programmer still structures the problem solving steps the same way the machine executes them; but now the computer itself is used to perform the translation from assembly language into machine language. For example, the assembly language program in Figure 3-10 will find the average of "N" number of grades.

This program now needs to be translated into the binary code that the machine can execute. This translation process, known as "assembly", is performed by another program called an "assembler". The program written in assembly language is known as the "source" program and the binary code created by the assembler is called the "object" program or code. The assembly language program (e.g., the source program in Figure 3-10) would then become the object program shown in Figure 3-9.

The introduction of assembly languages greatly simplified computer programming and resulted in an increase in productivity. Use of assembly language, however, does introduce some inefficiency in execution because the translation process introduces some overhead (additional code). The general ap-

STMT	SOURCE STATEMENT	
1 AVERAGE	CSECT	
2	STM 14,12,12(13)	
3	*THIS PROGRAM FINDS THE AVERAGE OF N INTEGER VALUES*	
4	BALR 12,8	
5	USING *,12	
6	ST 13,SAVE + 14	
7	LA 13,SAVE	
8	*STANDARD LINKAGE FROM OPERATING SYSTEM*	
9	L 6,N	*REGISTER USED TO INCREMENT*
10	LA 11,0	*REGISTER 11 USED FOR SUMMING*
11	LA 2,SSE	*ADDRESS OF FIRST NUMBER*
12 LOOP	A 11,0(3)	*SUM = SUM + NEXT NUMBER*
13	LA 3,4,(3)	*GET ADDRESS OF NEXT NUMBER*
14	BCT 6,LOOP	
15	M 10,=D'1'	*EXTEND SIGN BIT TO HIGH ORDER*
16 *		*REGISTER PAIR*
17	D 10,N	*INTEGER PART OF AVERAGE IS*
18 *		*PLACED IN REGISTER 11 (HEX)*
19		*AND REMAINDER IN REGISTER 11*
20	XDUMP	
21	L 13,SAVE + 4	
22	LM 14,12,12,(13)	
23	BR 14	
24 SAVE	DS 18F	
25 N	DC F'6'	
26 ADDR	DC F'16,32,442,988,-26,388'	
27 END		
28	=F'1'D	

Fig. 3-10 Assembly Language Program

proach to translation employed by an assembler can not always optimize the binary instructions to be as efficient as binary code written directly by a good programmer. Because the assembly language source program makes it easier to understand and to correct errors, modifying programs becomes easier and the benefits accrued from this far outweigh the inefficiency introduced by the translation process.

Assembly language, however, retains an almost one for one correspondence with the instruction set of a particular machine. This means that every machine instruction set has a different assembly language. When programming in assembly language, the programmer has to tailor the problem solving steps to the particular machine's repertoire of instructions. This dictates a unique assembly language for every machine. Because of this uniqueness, assembly language programs are

not transferrable among different types of machines.

### 3.5.3 High Order Language

The next advance in programming occurred with the introduction of higher order languages (HOLs). HOLs use statements that are more English-like, easier to understand, more productive, easier to support, and less dependent on the computer design. Examples of higher order languages are COBOL, FORTRAN, Pascal, and Ada. The COmmon Business Oriented Language (COBOL) was created in order to help the business community manage large amounts of data. FORTRAN, which is an acronym for FORMula TRANSlator, was developed for scientists and engineers and allowed the creation of mathematical algorithms and programs without the need to know the details of a particular computer ISA. Although these

languages can be used in applications other than those they were designed for, they have found their broadest application in the domain they are best suited for, namely scientific and business applications respectively. Different problem domains have created the need for new languages tailored to the peculiarities of that problem solving process. As a result of this need, hundreds of HOLs have been developed.

As with assembly language, a higher order language must be translated into a particular machine code. This process of translation is called "compiling" and the translator is a software program called a compiler. A compiler is generally a large and complex program that translates the HOL source program to the machine executable object program. Because the object program is machine dependent, the compiler translation is also machine dependent. That means that each different computer must have its own unique compiler.

Compilers are typically designed with the flexibility for translating HOL source code to many different machines. This is done by designing the compiler with a front end and a back end. When the translation is being performed, the source program instructions are first processed by the front end to create a program in a generic intermediate assembly-like language. This front end process is the most difficult part of the translation. The second step is to process this intermediate program with the back end of the compiler. The purpose of the back end, or code generator, is to translate the intermediate code into the machine language of the "target" computer (the one that will actually execute the program). The code generation process of a compiler is similar to an assembler. To translate to different target computers, the developer has to build the unique code generator for that particular target computer and

the front end, which is the toughest to develop, remains unchanged. In industry, once the first compiler is developed, subsequent compilers for different machines can be quickly constructed. A partial Ada program for the previous programs shown in Figure 3-9 and Figure 3-10 is found in Figure 3-11.

### 3.5.4 Application Generators (4GL)

All the earlier languages, including the high-order languages, are classified as "procedural" languages. The user must define in detail the sequence of operations required to solve a particular programming problem. A more recent development in programming technol-

```

with TEXT_IO; use TEXT_IO;
with GRADE_PACKAGE; use GRADE_PACKAGE;

procedure AVERAGE_GRADES is

  NEXT_GRADE : GRADE_PACKAGE.GRADE;
  THIS_HISTORY : GRADE_PACKAGE.GRADE_HISTORY;
  GRADE_COUNT : NATURAL := 0; -- number of grades to enter

  package GRADE_IO is new INTEGER_IO(GRADE_PACKAGE.GRADE);
  package NATURAL_IO is new INTEGER_IO(NATURAL);

begin
  put("Enter the number of grades: ");
  NATURAL_IO.get(GRADE_COUNT);

  while GRADE_COUNT > 0 loop
    begin
      put("Enter grade: ");
      GRADE_IO.get(NEXT_GRADE);
      skip_line;

      GRADE_PACKAGE.ADD(THIS_HISTORY, NEXT_GRADE);
      GRADE_COUNT := GRADE_COUNT - 1;
    end;
  end loop; --finished getting grades

  put("The Average is:");
  GRADE_IO.put(GRADE_PACKAGE.AVERAGE(THIS_HISTORY));
  new_line;

```

Fig. 3-11 Ada Program

ogy, called application generators or fourth-generation languages (4GLs), can greatly increase programmer productivity. A 4GLs allows an end user to build applications programs without resorting to coding the details in a particular computer language. Since most application generators are non-procedural, they allow the programmer or user to define the problem while the system defines the steps required to solve the problem.

To make the distinction between the procedural and nonprocedural languages clearer, one may use the analogy of providing instructions to a taxi driver. With the procedural language one must tell the driver exactly what to do. "Drive 500 yards due North. Turn left. Drive 380 yards, etc." With a nonprocedural language one may say, "Take me to the Criterion Theater on Main Street." The most powerful nonprocedural languages may permit one to simply say, "Take me to see *Gone With the Wind*." The taxi driver will then search theater listings to determine where the movie is playing. In this case the taxi driver might say that the request is illogical, if the nearest theater at which this movie is playing is in another city or state.

Fourth-generation languages vary greatly in their power and capabilities. While some fourth-generation languages can be used to create complete applications, many are report generators or graphics packages. Most are dependent on a well-defined data base, and are designed for only a specific class or range of applications. Vendors of the more comprehensive products describe their more limited competition as "not true fourth-generation languages." However, it is often better to use a language designed for a limited set of functions because it is easier to learn than a full programming language. *Lotus 1-2-3* is a good example of this kind of language.

This language has gained a vast number of users because it made it easy to manipulate spreadsheet data [5].

Fourth-generation languages can be very beneficial in developing mission support software; however at the present time there are few languages targeted toward the embedded computer market. These languages, in general, tend to develop machine language that is even less efficient than the machine language developed by HOLs, which mitigates against using them to develop real-time systems.

### 3.6 ADA

For most DOD applications, policy requires that developers use the Ada programming language. This policy will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 4; however, because of the widespread implications of the policy, the program manager needs to know more about the language and its supporting environment.

#### 3.6.1 Ada Design

The Ada programming language was designed with three overriding concerns: program reliability and support, programming as a human activity, and efficiency [1]. The result of these concerns was the creation of a language that embodies the principles of modern software engineering practices. Applying these principles, or tools of the trade, helps one deal with two very real and difficult aspects of large-scale software developments: complexity and change.

Ada was specifically designed to encourage or help the engineer or programmer develop software that is reliable and simple to maintain. In particular, Ada emphasizes program readability over ease of writing. For example, the rules of the language require that program

variables be explicitly declared a particular type such as real, integer, Boolean, etc. Since the type of a variable is unalterable, compilers can ensure that the only operations performed on variables are those allowed by the rules of the Ada language syntax. This prevents the programmer from attempting to perform an illegal operation such as multiplying an integer value with a string variable. Furthermore, error-prone notations have been eliminated because the language avoids the use of cryptic encoded forms in favor of more English-like constructs. Finally, the language offers support for separate compilation of program units in a way that facilitates program development and support.

A major strength of Ada lies in its ability to perform numerous checks both during compilation and at run time. The richness of the syntax makes it more difficult for a programmer to code and compile a program, but once compiled an Ada program is more apt to run correctly than a program written in any other language. In other words, Ada enforces a certain amount of discipline into the programming process. This is a significant contribution to reliable software.

Concern for the human programmer was also stressed during the language design. An attempt was made to keep the language as small as possible by trying to avoid the pitfalls of excessive complexity. Ada uses simpler designs to provide language constructs that correspond intuitively to what the users would expect.

Like many other human activities, software programs are becoming larger and their development is becoming ever more decentralized and distributed. Consequently, the Ada designers provided the ability to assemble a program from independently produced software components.

### 3.6.2 Ada Compilers

No high order language can avoid the addressing the issue of compiler translation efficiency, because a poor compiler can result in poor run-time efficiency and inefficient use of storage affecting all machines and all programs. During Ada specification development, every proposed construct of the language was examined in the light of current state-of-the-art compiler implementation techniques. Any proposed construct whose implementation was unclear or that required excessive machine resources was rejected [2]. However, there are substantial differences among validated Ada compilers. To explain the reasons for these differences, it is appropriate to explain what validation means. Validation is the official DoD process used to demonstrate that a candidate Ada compiler conforms to the Ada language standards. Relevant policy for validation is documented in the *Ada Compiler Validation Procedures, Version 2*, published by the AJPO, May 1989. This policy states that Ada compilers must be validated by the Ada Validation Facility (AVF) managed by the Ada Validation Organization (AVO). A compiler will receive certification if it passes all applicable tests in the Ada Compiler Validation Capability (ACVC) test suite. The test suite, which is now updated every eighteen months, encompasses six different classes of test and includes more than four thousand individual tests. While the testing is extensive, the individual tests tend to test simple capabilities rather than capacity or synergistic issues. Validation does not guarantee that the compiler is error free, nor does it imply anything about the performance or functionality of the compiler.

Nelson H. Weiderman of SEI states that "*There is an important difference between validation and evaluation. Validation tests conformance to ANSI/MIL-STD-1815A.*

*Validation cannot be relied upon for determining whether a given Ada compiler is fit for use in a particular application.*" Evaluation issues are covered in the *Ada Adoption Handbook: Compiler Evaluation and Selection* [5].

### 3.6.3 Ada Language Features

Ada has incorporated the following software engineering features:

**Abstraction** is a simplified description or specification that suppresses some of the details or properties. A good abstraction is one that emphasizes data that is significant and suppresses immaterial details. This facilitates the management of complexity in software development and maintenance. For example, a vehicle is an abstraction at a general level. One can provide further detail to the class of vehicles by identifying an automobile. Then one can further describe the various characteristics of an automobile such as a six cylinder engine, two door sedan and so on to describe a specific automobile. This of course can continue down to the smallest component necessary. Notice that each lower level adds detail.

**Information hiding** is the technique of providing only the essential information necessary for interfacing with a given unit. A specification control drawing is an example of information hiding. This type of drawing provides information on the inputs and outputs of a particular device without providing any details on the internal structure. This prevents detailed information from confusing essential information. Abstraction and information hiding assist programmers deal with complexity.

**Modularity** is the principle of logical structuring. One decomposes a design through levels of abstraction so that it has the properties of

loose coupling and tight cohesion. A module can be described as an entity or unit whose internal elements are tightly bound or related (cohesion) but with light interconnections (coupling). In design, one would collect all logically related resources into one module. This is the principle of **localization**. Modularity and localization help the programmer to deal with complexity as well as with change. The effects of change can be better controlled or isolated through modular design and localization.

All these features contribute to reliable, maintainable, understandable, and efficient designs. They also allow the programmer to cope with the complexities of large-scale systems and the inevitability of change. Ada incorporates all of these attributes. The different concepts embraced by Ada are not new to programming languages. What is unique is that Ada is the first language to combine all these features into a single language.

There are some unique features provided by Ada that are not provided by any other production languages: the package, exception handling, tasking, and generics.

Packages are entities or collections of related objects and their operations. This collection of resources can be viewed as a wall surrounding a collection of logically related entities such as operations, data types, and related program units [2]. The package enforces the principles of modularity, localization, abstraction, and information hiding.

Exception handling provides a controlled way to exit from an abnormal event. In real-time operations, one cannot allow an abnormal event, such as division by zero or a register overflow, to halt the entire process. Through exception handling, abnormal events are flagged during processing and purposefully

handled to prevent a catastrophic failure. This is done in one of three ways: allowing execution to follow an alternate path, restarting the operation at a controlled point, or overriding the current data with default values. Exception handling is one way of designing graceful degradation into the software.

**Tasking** is very important in real time operations. Tasking allows concurrent or parallel processing to occur in the same or separate processors. In the real world, processes are generally concurrent. This approach to design breaks the sequential mindset but is one of the features of Ada that is most often criticized. Real-time applications require fast, reliable completion of tasks whose priorities are constantly changing; however, Ada completes each task before starting another task and Ada fixes priorities at compilation time and is therefore inflexible to the changing environment or the real world. Work-arounds are currently available to circumvent this problem, and this weakness will be one of the areas addressed when the language specifications are updated.

**Generics** is a feature that reduces complexity and encourages the production of reusable code components. The concept of generics is similar to a template whereby a structure and associated operations are defined for later use in specific application. For example, a generic routine can be created for sorting any number of items. The process of sorting is the same whether one is sorting numbers, names, or objects. In other languages, one creates different sort routines for each application. With the generic capability in Ada, one routine will suffice. This reduces the need for multiple programs for performing the same task. It also aids in dealing with large complex systems by introducing common generic packages.

It is important to understand that Ada provides a means for achieving good designs because it embodies principles of good systems and software engineering. It is also important to know that the Ada programming language itself is only a small part of the process of designing sound systems. The design and development of good software requires more than just a good programming language. One must still employ sound design practices and procedures, strong configuration management practices, and good system design tools and aids. In addition, all programmers must be adequately trained on the use of these methods and tools.

### 3.6.4 Ada Environment

In the past, software tools were as diverse and hardware unique as the languages they supported. The goal of the early developers of Ada was to develop a total environment which supported the systems development life cycle. To achieve portability, the environment is broken into the Kernel Ada Programming Support Environment and the Ada Programming Support Environment.

#### 3.6.4.1 Kernel Ada Programming Support Environment (KAPSE)

The KAPSE contains all low-level features necessary to rehost onto another system. It also supports: database access, input/output, terminal to tool access, and the runtime system

#### 3.6.4.2 Ada Programming Support Environment (APSE)

The APSE typically consists of:

**Editor.** An interactive tool, preferably one that is language specific for creating documentation and source code.

**Debugger.** A debugger is a programmer productivity tool for finding errors. It should be integrated with the compiler to provide source code information.

**Linker.** The linker joins together object modules into executable modules which will run on the target machine.

**Configuration Manager.** This tool is used to keep track of the different versions of the documentation and code.

**Static Analyzer.** This tool provides information such as number of lines of code, number of comments, level of complexity, and measures of coding style.

**Dynamic Analyzer.** This tool monitors and reports the execution behavior of object code so that the programmer can "fine tune" the system.

**Library Management Tools.** These are tools which automatically recompile and relink object modules.

**Test Tools.** Tools to automatically generate test data and compare actual output to expected output.

### 3.6.4.3 Ada Program Design Language

One of the most important tools currently used for designing software is a program design language (PDL). The DOD's policy concerning PDLs is given in DOD Directive 3405.2, *Use of Ada in Weapon Systems* which states:

*"An Ada-based program design language shall be used during the designing of software. Use of a PDL that can be successfully compiled by a validated Ada compiler is encouraged in order to facilitate the portability of the design."*

A PDL is a formal language (sometimes referred to as pseudo-code) for specifying the "blueprint" for software implementation. When Ada is used as a PDL, the properties of the language allow the "blueprint" of a software design to be run through an Ada compiler with the restriction that it doesn't execute. This allows the compiler to perform all the syntactic and semantic checks it normally performs. No other HOL, currently in use, has its own PDL. Several Ada-based PDLs exist. An example of one is IEEE Standard, IEEE-STD-990-1987.

A PDL is not a panacea for software development. Poor software designs can be produced using a PDL. PDLs, however, have major advantages which can make the process of software design, code, test and integration a less painful process.

## 3.7 Ada SURVIVAL

It is important to understand that the Ada programming language is still in a period of transition, and although the risk of using Ada is much less than it was only a few years ago, there are still several factors to consider when evaluating the risks of using Ada. The Software Engineering Institute's publication entitled *Ada Adoption Handbook: A Program Manager's Guide* [4] provides considerable detail and suggestions for dealing with Ada in today's environment. Figure 3-12 contains a checklist of helpful hints for those embarking

- Get training and experience
- Be aware of Ada's benefits and shortcoming
- Select a contractor with a proven track record
- Select a compiler based on:
  - characteristics of your application
  - evaluation of compiler performance
  - evaluation of vendor support services
- Invest in system support tools
- Know your risk and manage it

Fig. 3-12 Ada Survival Checklist

tem development. One must understand that work-arounds exist for many of the known deficiencies of Ada.

### 3.8 REFERENCES

1. ANSI/MIL-STD-1815A, *Ada Programming Language*, 22 Jan 1983.
2. Booch, Grady, *Software Engineering With Ada*, Menlo Park, The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., 1983.
3. Taft, Darryl K., "Revisions to Ada Standard Expected After Reviews", *Government Computer News*, Jan 22, 1988.
4. Foreman, John and John Goodenough, *Ada Adoption Handbook: A Program Manager's Guide*, Software Engineering Institute Technical Report CMU/SEI-87-TR-9, May 1987.
5. Weiderman, Nelson H. *Ada Adoption Handbook: Compiler Evaluation and Selection*, Software Engineering Institute Technical Report CMU/SEI-89-13, Mar 1989.

## CHAPTER 4

---

# SOFTWARE ACQUISITION POLICY

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter summarizes the DOD's policies governing the acquisition of mission critical computer resources (MCCR). In dealing with policy, it may be useful to understand the history behind its implementation. Towards that end, this chapter will provide a historical perspective of the various laws, regulations, and initiatives that relate to MCCR.

As indicated in the previous chapter, computers and software have become an extremely vital component of a weapon system. In a span of only twenty-five to thirty years, the dependence on software and cost of software has grown tremendously. With this growth, there has been an accompanying rise in the technical and management problems across all of the services.

### 4.2 BROOKS BILL

Prior to 30 October 1965, there was no form of standardization or control over the procurement of automatic data processing

(ADP) equipment within the federal government. On that date, however, Public Law 89-306 (otherwise known as the Brooks Bill) was signed by President Johnson. This bill was intended to promote competition and insure stability in the procurement of ADP resources. By 1976, 36% of the systems were procured in a fully competitive manner and, according to the General Services Administration (GSA), over \$681 million in cost avoidance has been achieved in 302 competitive ADP contracts [1].

Traditionally, computers and software have been viewed by top level management as tools for improving efficiency and conserving resources. Although this is true, computer resources need to be treated in the same manner as other acquisitions, not as mere tools. Although primarily directed toward the procurement of ADP equipment, the Brooks Bill forces federal agencies to analyze their ADP requirements, like they would for other systems, and compete for the most economic

and efficient system. In an effort to achieve this goal, the Brooks Bill assigned responsibilities as follows: the GSA was given the authority for procuring ADP resources required by federal agencies; the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) was to provide policy guidance and overall leadership (i.e., they were to act as mediator in resolving any user and GSA disputes); and the National Institute of Standards (formerly the National Bureau of Standards) was to develop ADP standards.

The Brooks Bill, however, does not permit the GSA to interfere with an agency's (user) determination of its ADP requirements. The user determines its requirements for ADP equipment and the potential method of procurement. The method of procurement is then approved by the GSA and any disputes resolved by the OMB.

The DOD considers MCCR exempt from the provisions of the Brooks Bill because MCCR is not specifically addressed in the ADP definition. Therefore, the DOD has continued to procure MCCR as part of the weapon system using major system acquisition guidelines. Additional legislation in the form of the Warner-Nunn Amendment and various DOD Directives and Instructions has further approved this interpretation.

#### 4.3 DOD DIRECTIVE 5000.29

DOD Directive 5000.29, *Management of Computer Resources in Major Defense Systems* was published on 26 April 1976. Its purpose was to establish a DOD policy for the management and control of computer resources during the life cycle of major weapon systems.

The directive was the first major step undertaken by the DOD to address the growing software problem. It represented the

department's first formal recognition that software is critical to weapon systems and should be managed as a configuration item in the same manner as hardware. As such, software requirements should be validated and risk analyses performed prior to a Milestone II decision in order to insure that the software requirements reflect the operational requirements. All of the management tools used in the development of hardware should be applied to software (e.g., configuration management, baseline\milestone management, and life cycle support planning tools).

In an effort to help carry out the intent of this directive, a Management Steering Committee for Embedded Computer Resources was also established in 1976 and its charter was contained in the directive. The purpose of the steering committee is to increase the visibility and improve the management of computer resources within the DOD, to formulate a coordinated technological base program for software, and to integrate computer resource policy into the normal process of major system acquisitions.

The steering committee is composed of two boards: the Executive Board and the Management Advisory Board. The Executive Board is responsible for the development of policy necessary for the acquisition and management of computer resources in major defense systems. It consists of a representative from the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Installations and Logistics), who is the chairman, the Deputy Director Research & Engineering; the Director, Telecommunications and Command and Control Systems; the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Comptroller); and the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Intelligence).

The Management Advisory Board is responsible for coordinating technology efforts among the DOD components, for conducting

policy impact assessment for the Executive Board relating to computer resources, and for reviewing computer resource technology programs for policy consistency. It consists of representatives from the Navy, Army, Air Force, Office of Joint Chiefs of Staff, Defense Communications Agency, National Security Agency, Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, and Deputy Director (T&E).

#### **4.4 WARNER-NUNN AMENDMENT**

The Warner-Nunn Amendment (Section 908 of Public Law 97-86, the DOD Authorization Act, 1982) was implemented in order to broaden the range of embedded computer resources excluded from the provisions of the Brooks Bill. It was intended to provide the DOD with more control over the acquisition of computer resources that are an integral part of weapon systems.

The Warner-Nunn Amendment defined those computer resources which are exempt from the Brooks Bill. It defined MCCR as those computer resources that perform the following functions, operation, or use [2]:

- (a) Involves intelligence activities;
- (b) Involves cryptoanalytic activities related to national security;
- (c) Involves the command and control of military forces;
- (d) Involves equipment that is an integral part of a weapon system;
- (e) Is critical to the direct fulfillment military or intelligence missions.

The essential test as to whether the acquisition of computer resources is covered by the

Warner-Nunn Amendment or the Brooks Bill is the intended use of the equipment and services, and not their commercial market place availability. Interpretation of these policies must not be lightly rationalized and used as an excuse to depart from sound business and management practices. Where there is doubt as to the applicability, case-by-case determinations shall be made by the Under Secretary of Defense (Research and Engineering), in coordination with the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Comptroller) [3].

#### **4.5 MCCR STANDARDIZATION**

The explosion in the number of weapon system computer applications that occurred during the late 1960s and the 1970s, resulted in a comparable explosion in the number and types of computers and programming languages. By the mid-seventies, there were literally hundreds of different computer programming languages being used to generate military systems software. Along with these languages, there was an almost equal number of different computers in use. The result was that engineers, technicians, and computer programmers who were supporting a particular weapon system could not support a different weapon system without costly retraining and delays. Rarely would two different weapon systems use the same computer or the same programming language. This led to needless duplication of effort and inefficient use of human resources. Since each system had its own computer and programming language, each system was unique and required unique resources.

In order to minimize weapon system software support costs and to promote interoperability between the various systems, the DOD focused on three areas: higher order languages (HOLs), the software development process, and computer hardware. The

specific policy and guidance for each area are the following:

### HOLs

DOD Directive 3405.1,  
*Computer Programming Language Policy*

DOD Directive 3405.2,  
*Use of Ada in Weapon Systems*

### Software Development

DOD-STD-2167A,  
*Defense System Software Development*

DOD-STD-2168,  
*Defense System Software Quality Program*

### Computer Hardware

MIL-STD-1750A,  
*Airborne Computer Instruction Set Architecture.*

HOLs and computer hardware were already discussed in Chapter 3. DOD-STD-2167A and 2168 are addressed in Chapter 5.

## 4.6 DOD DIRECTIVE 3405.2

Standardization of HOLs has been an issue within the DOD since the early 1970s. In 1976 DOD Instruction 5000.31, *Interim List of DOD Approved Higher Order Languages (HOL)* was issued as an interim measure to limit the number of DOD approved HOLs to six:

DOD	FORTRAN
	COBOL
Army	TACPOL
Navy	CMS-2M
	CMS-2Y

Air Force JOVIAL J3  
JOVIAL J73

Later that instruction was amended to include ATLAS as an approved HOL for automatic test equipment. Concurrently, the DOD initiated a fully competitive program to develop a common, preferred, single HOL for DOD software development programs. The outcome of these efforts was the Ada programming language. DOD Directive 3405.2, *Use of Ada in Weapon Systems*, was published on March 30, 1987. This directive established DOD policy for the use of Ada as the *single, common, HOL* in the development of computers integral to weapon systems. Computers are defined as being integral to a weapon system if they are:

- (a) Physically a part of, dedicated to, or essential to the real time performance of the mission;
- (b) Used for specialized training, diagnostic test and maintenance, simulation, or calibration;
- (c) Used for R & D of weapon systems.

The directive applies to all new weapon systems entering into development (prior to Full Scale Development (FSD)) and to major upgrades (greater than 1/3 modification) to existing systems. There are three exceptions, however, to using the Ada programming language:

- (a) If, on the effective date of the directive, a programming language other than Ada was already in use during the FSD phase of a weapon system, then that particular language may continue to be used throughout the deployment and software support phases unless the system is undergoing a major software upgrade.

(b) Ada is preferred, but not required, as a test language to be used solely for hardware under test equipment.

(c) Ada is preferred, but not required, for commercially available, off-the-shelf software that will not be modified by the DOD.

Except for the conditions stated above, a waiver is required. Authority for issuing waivers is delegated to each DOD component only on a specific system or subsystem basis. For each proposed waiver, a full justification will be prepared and will include analysis of developmental risk, technical performance, life cost, and schedule impact.

#### **4.7 DOD DIRECTIVE 3405.1**

The overall policy for DOD computer languages, DOD Directive 3405.1, *Computer Programming Language Policy*, was published 2 April 1987, three days after the Ada directive. It superseded DOD Instruction 5000.31 and revised the list of approved DOD HOLs to be used for the development and support of all computer resources managed under DOD Directive 5000.29 and DOD Directive 7920.1 (See Section 4.13). The approved list of the DOD programming languages is: Ada, C/ATLAS, COBOL, CMS-2M, CMS-2Y, FORTRAN, JOVIAL (J73), MINIMAL BASIC, PASCAL, and SPL/1.

This directive stresses standardization of HOLs, and establishes Ada as the single, common preferred language within the DOD. When Ada is not used, only the other approved standard languages listed shall be used. This directive serves to limit the number of HOLs used in the DOD and facilitates the transition to Ada. The order of preference is based upon life cycle cost and impact as follows:

(a) Off-the-shelf applications packages and advanced software technology;

(b) Ada-based software and tools;

(c) Approved standard HOLs.

#### **4.8 Ada PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE**

As mentioned earlier, after the successful development of the first HOL compiler, many new HOLs were quickly introduced. The proliferation of languages within DOD had resulted in an unwieldy logistics problem. Each different language had its own unique support requirements. In 1975, Malcolm Currie, then Under Secretary of Defense for Research and Engineering (USDRE), suggested that the DOD consider using just one software language. In 1976, an interim policy was issued requiring the use of "approved" higher order languages listed in DOD Instruction 5000.31. At about the same time a committee called the Higher Order Language Working Group was formed to review existing HOLs to determine candidates for a single DOD language. Their charter was to look for HOLs specifically geared for weapon system acquisition. One of their goals was to find a language that supported both real-time processing and large scale software development programs. The HOL was also supposed to support modern programming techniques and practices such as top-down and structured design.

The Language Working Group's January 1977 evaluation concluded that no existing language met all the DOD requirements but that some, such as Pascal, Algol, and PL/I could form a good basis for designing a "new" language. In July 1977, as a result of an extensive evaluation process, a new set of language requirements was established. The government initiated four contracts for the design of

this new DOD language. After exhaustive design evaluations, a final selection was made for one contractor to develop the new language which became known as Ada. The language was named after Lady Augusta Ada Byron, Countess of Lovelace, who is credited with being the first programmer. She was a well educated mathematician who suggested and wrote the first programs for Charles Babbage's "Analytic Engine", a predecessor of the modern computer. The winning contractor was the French based Honeywell-Bull Corporation, and the design team was led by Jean Ichbiah. Their product, the Ada Programming Language Specification, MIL-STD-1815, was officially published on 10 December 1980. In June 1983, it became an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard and was officially published as ANSI/MIL-STD-1815A on 22 January 1983. In March 1987 it became an International Standards Organization (ISO) standard. The European software community has been quick to adopt Ada.

In June 1983 when Dr. Richard DeLauer, then the USDRE, directed that Ada be used on all new major programs, he had been led to believe by the DOD software community that the necessary technical support (i.e., compilers) for Ada would be ready. Unfortunately, this was not the case and this lack of supporting tools is probably responsible for a majority of the bad initial publicity Ada may have received. The fact remains, however, that Ada is a good language for use on MCCR as well as for general purpose applications. What was initially missing were the support resources required to develop Ada software; the same resources that are required to develop software in any HOL. The need for support was well recognized and initial compilers and tool sets to aid in the development of Ada software are now becoming readily available.

The major concept behind the use of Ada is the enforcement of modern software engineering principles. It is the real strength behind the Ada programming language.

#### 4.9 SOFTWARE ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY

A great deal of effort has been applied to the area of software engineering, especially the application of systems engineering to the software development process. Numerous organizations have been created and/or tasked with evaluating methods for improving software quality and reliability; for reducing development and support costs; and for controlling the management of software development. The main programs that have been initiated are:

(a) **Very High Speed Integrated Circuits (VHSIC)** - The VHSIC Program Office was created in 1980 by the DOD in order to alleviate deficiencies in military integrated circuits (ICs). Unlike the early days of IC technology, the DOD was no longer the driving force behind technological innovation nor the largest user of IC chips. The commercial market place was now dictating IC developments by virtue of the fact that it was by far the largest consumer of IC products. This meant that military applications had become a specialty and a highly customized business. The commercial market place had no need for extremely fast, highly specialized, low-volume IC products; therefore the DOD took the initiative, through the VHSIC program, to accelerate the development of this technology.

Another problem plaguing military electronics has been the unusually long time it takes to incorporate a new product into a weapon system once the product is introduced into the commercial market place. It is not unusual for a product to appear in a weapon

system up to five years after its commercial appearance. In order to speed up this process, the VHSIC Program has supported the development and insertion of VHSIC chips into military systems. This gives developers and acquisition managers a military qualified microelectronic technology that is on a par with commercially available technology. At present, VHSIC technology is being introduced into at least twenty-seven major systems. This technology has the potential for greatly improving system performance [4]. Great advances are being made in computer hardware. The challenge to the software community is to capitalize on this wealth of hardware technology. Software needs to be developed to fully use the capability of this new hardware.

(b) **Software Technology for Adaptable Reliable Systems (STARS)** - The STARS Program Office was established in 1983 by the DOD to investigate ways of reducing software development costs, to increase software systems reliability, to investigate software automation techniques, and to look at applications for reusable software.

(c) **Software Engineering Institute (SEI)** - The SEI, located at Carnegie-Mellon University, was placed under contract by the Air Force (Electronics System Division, Hanscom AFB) in 1984. They were tasked with investigating the transition of new software technology, analyzing software development environments, and providing education in the software and system engineering process. The SEI has recommended changes to the Federal Acquisition Regulations on software data rights provisions [5]; developed an educational program on software engineering; established liaisons with a variety of educational institutions in order to disseminate curriculum information and material for undergraduate and graduate

education; and conducted numerous software engineering conferences.

(d) **Defense Science Board (DSB)** - A DSB Task Force on software was originally convened in 1981 by the Under Secretary of Defense (Acquisition) to review a draft DOD Instruction on standardizing computer hardware. The DSB recommended cancelling any further tasking in this area. The Air Force, however, had already developed a standardized ISA for a sixteen bit airborne computer (MIL-STD-1750A). Later in the year, the DSB was tasked with reviewing overall software acquisition, management, and computer resource technology procedures and providing recommendations for rectifying any problems. The Task Force's September 1987 report, stated that the major problems with military software development were not technical problems, but management problems. They recommended that the DOD re-examine and change the attitudes, policies, and practices regarding software acquisition [5].

## 4.10 SOFTWARE SUPPORT

The Joint Logistics Commanders Joint Policy Coordination Group on Computer Resources Management established a sub-panel in 1979 to specifically look into post-deployment software support (PDSS) and the procedures required to provide adequate software support during and after transition. PDSS will be discussed in Chapter 7.

## 4.11 TOP LEVEL SERVICE DIRECTIVES AND GUIDELINES

The following is a list of the guidance documents for the respective services. All of these documents stem from the guidance provided by DOD Directive 5000.29, *Management of Computer Resources in Major Defense Systems*.

Navy	ASDP 800-5 <i>Software Development Capability/Capacity Review</i> , 10 1987
<b>SECNAVINST 5200.32</b> <i>Management of Embedded Computer Resources in Department of the Navy Systems</i> , Jun 79	
<b>OPNAVINST 5200.28</b> <i>Life Cycle Management of Mission Critical Computer Resources for Navy Systems</i> , 25 September 1985	
<b>OPNAVINST 5230.21</b> <i>Instruction on Standard Embedded Computer Resources</i>	<b>Assistant Secretary of Army Policy Letter</b> <i>Standardization of ECR</i> , 1 July 1980
<b>NAVELEXINST 5200.23</b> <i>Instruction on General Software Management</i>	<b>DARCOM-R-70-16</b> <i>Management of Computer Resources in Battlefield Automated Systems</i> , 16 July 1979
<b>TADSTANDS</b> <i>Tactical Digital Systems Standards A through D</i> on standard definitions, computers, programming languages, reserve capacities, and documentation.	<b>AMC-P 70-13</b> <i>AMC Software Management Indicators</i> , 31 January 1987
Air Force	Marines
<b>AFR 800-14</b> <i>Life Cycle Management of Computer Resources in Systems</i> , 29 September 1986	<b>MCO 5200.23</b> <i>Management of ECR in the Marine Corps</i> , 19 August 1982
<b>AFSCP 800-14</b> <i>Air Force Systems Command Software Quality Indicators: Management Quality Insight</i> , 20 January 1987	<b>4.12 SOFTWARE DATA RIGHTS</b>
<b>AFSCP 800-43</b> <i>Air Force Systems Command Software Quality Indicators: Management Insight</i> , 31 Jan 1986	The following definitions are relevant to software data rights:
<b>AFSC/AFLCP 800-45</b> <i>Software Risk Abatement (Draft)</i> , 1988.	<b>Copyright</b> - A copyright protects the expression of an idea through unauthorized copying or reproduction. It is easy and inexpensive to obtain by simply filing an application with the copyright office and providing a copy for the Library of Congress. No examination of the material is required.
<b>AFSCP 800-5</b> <i>Software Independent Verification and Validation (IV&amp;V) (Draft)</i>	<b>Trade secret</b> - Protects the underlying ideas, concepts, procedures, formula, pattern, device or compilation that derives economic value by not being readily available to others. Must maintain secrecy (information is not public domain).
	<b>Patent</b> - Protection by trademark or trade name. It is expensive, uncertain, and time

consuming (may take two years to obtain). Patents destroy trade secret protection because patent disclosures are quite complete.

**Restricted rights** - Software developed totally by non-government funds and usually licensed to users.

**License agreements** - Agreement between a contractor and the government (or another contractor) limiting the use and the copying of data which has been commercially sold (rights to use, disclose, or reproduce).

The Federal copyright laws, patent laws, and state trade secret laws provide legal protection of a contractor's computer software. The Copyright Act of 1976 was amended in 1980 to include computer programs. The Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP) was tasked by a 10 April 1987 Executive Order, to develop a firm national policy in favor of commercial rights [6]. In the meantime, FAR Subpart 27.4 and 52.227-14 provide guidance to the program office on software data rights. Specific language in accordance with these clauses of the FAR should be included in the contract, both for the protection of the government and the contractor.

#### 4.13 AUTOMATED INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Although this chapter deals primarily with the computer resources associated with weapon systems, it may be useful to briefly discuss the DOD policy on automated information systems.

After the DOD had taken steps to provide initial guidance on the management aspects of weapon system computer resources, it published DOD Directive 7920.1, *Life Cycle Management of Automated Information Systems (AIS)* on 17 October 1978 and DOD

Instruction 7920.2, "Major Automated Information Systems Approval Process" on 20 October 1978. These two documents established the policy for the procurement of general purpose computers or ADP equipment primarily intended for use in business applications and subject to the provisions of the Brooks Bill. AIS defines procedures for the acquisition of equipment which is designed, built, operated, and maintained for the sole purpose of collecting, recording, processing, storing, retrieving, and displaying information. These systems usually have large data storage requirements and are used for business type applications such as payroll, accounting, and inventory. The function of these two DOD documents is very similar to that of the DOD Directive 5000.29. Some of the similarities include the promotion of life cycle management, visibility, cost effectiveness, standardization of the approval process, and emphasis on requirements' validation.

#### 4.14 SUMMARY

Proliferation of software and computer resources has occurred since their introduction in the late fifties. The Brooks Bill was passed in 1965 to promote competition and to regulate how ADP should be acquired and managed within the government. The emphasis in this chapter, however, has been on the acquisition policy for software exempted from the Brooks Bill.

In 1976 the DOD issued Directive 5000.29. This directive provided guidance on the management of software and embedded computer resources. Management Steering Committee for Embedded Computer Resources was established to guide this effort. This was followed by software workshops in 1979 conducted by the Joint Logistics Commanders' Joint Policy Coordination Group on Computer Resource Management. For the past

several years, a major DOD focus has been the standardization of the software life cycle.

#### **4.15 REFERENCES**

1. Thirty-eighth Report by the Committee on Government Operations, *Administration of Public Law 89-306, Procurement of ADP Resources by the Federal Government*, 1 October 1976.
2. Section 2315 of Title 10, United States Code.
3. Memorandum of Deputy Secretary of Defense, *Acquisition of Automatic Data Processing (ADP) Equipment and Services*, 1 February 1982.
4. VHSIC Program Office, *VHSIC Annual Report for 1986*, Office of the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition, 31 December 1986.
5. Report of the Defense Science Board Task Force, *Military Software*, Office of the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition, September 1987.
6. "Commercial Rights Will Be Protected," *Washington Technology*, 17 December 1987.

# CHAPTER 5

---

## SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

### 5.1 INTRODUCTION

The development of a weapon system requires integrating technical, administrative, and management disciplines into a cohesive, well-planned, and rigorously controlled process. As a critical component of a weapon system, software must be developed under a similarly disciplined engineering process. In *Software Engineering Concepts* [1], Richard Fairley defines software engineering as:

*"...the technological and managerial discipline concerned with systematic production and maintenance of software products that are developed and modified on time and within cost estimates."*

Barry Boehm [2] defines software engineering as a discipline that:

*"...involves the practical application of scientific knowledge to the design and construction of computer programs and the associated documentation required to develop, operate, and maintain them."*

The main point is that the software development process must be scientific and disciplined. This is not different from the hardware development process. As with hardware, the goal of the software development process is to consistently produce a quality product, within schedule and cost.

With the publication of DOD-STD-2167A, *Defense System Software Development*, the DOD took the first step toward a standardized, systems engineering approach to software development [3]. This standard is supported by other military documents and describes a standard process and documentation for computer software development. To use this standard effectively, the program office must have a thorough understanding of the system being developed; particularly the overall system requirements and constraints.

Requirements must be defined early through trade studies and prototyping. Traceability of

requirements must be maintained throughout the acquisition life cycle and any requirement that cannot be traced up to a higher requirement should be modified or eliminated.

The material presented in this chapter will describe activities that occur in a "typical" program. The reader should understand that real programs seldom actually follow this "typical" profile. Phases can occur concurrently; they can be by-passed altogether; protracted; or condensed to satisfy the needs of the overall program objectives. The point to understand is that although the process is somewhat constant, its chronological occurrence is not fixed. The following sections describe the classical approach to software development.

## 5.2 SUMMARY OF DEVELOPMENT ACTIVITIES

Figure 5-1 presents an overview of the development activities of an integrated software and hardware system as reflected in DOD-STD-2167A.

All weapon system development programs begin with a determination of system level requirements. These activities occur during the Concept Exploration (CE) and the Demonstration/Validation (D/V) phases of the acquisition cycle.

The Systems Requirements Review (SRR) may be held after the initial determination of system functions (functional analysis) and the preliminary allocation of these functions to configuration items. The SRR provides an opportunity for an initial insight into the developer's direction, progress and convergence on a system configuration. The System Design Review (SDR) is a review of the overall system requirements in order to establish the functional baseline documented by the system specification. The functional baseline should allocate requirements to hardware and software configuration items.

The development of both hardware and software can begin once the Functional Baseline is established. These activities occur

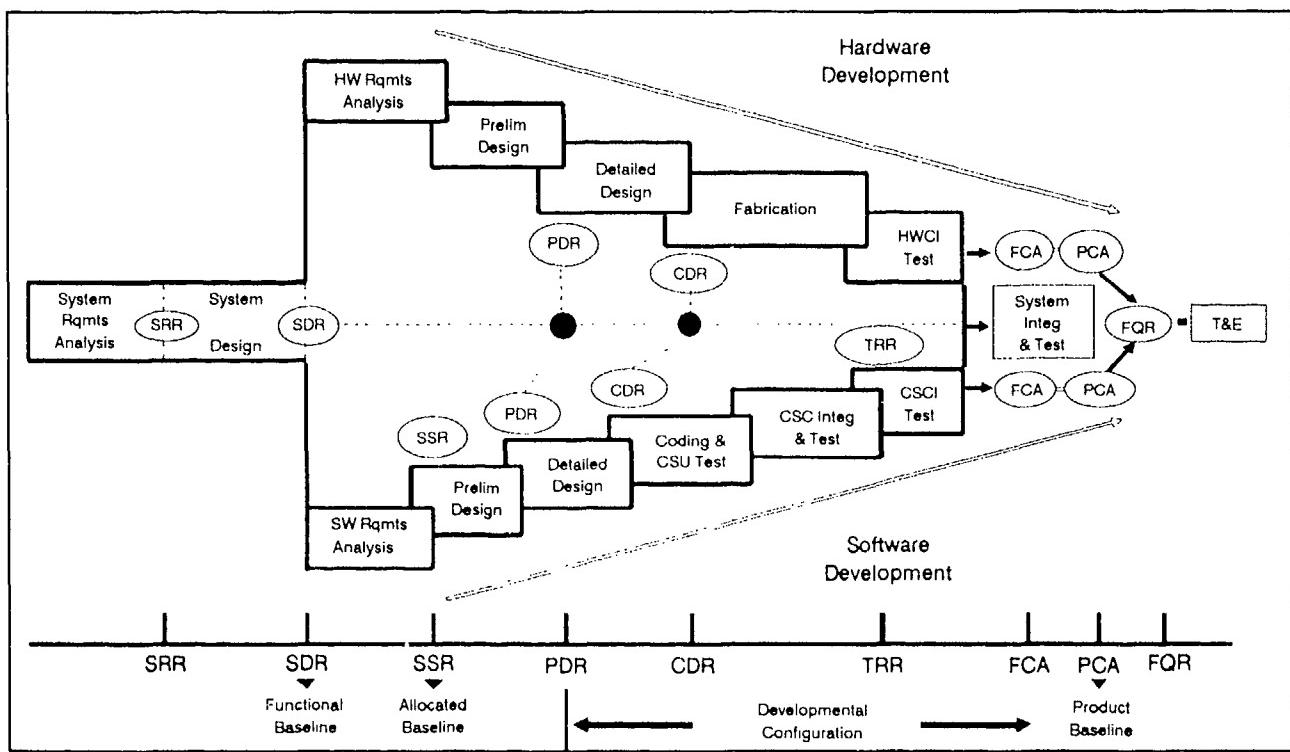


Fig. 5-1 Software/Hardware Development

in the Full Scale Development (FSD) phase and are monitored through reviews and audits as described in MIL-STD-1521B, *Technical Reviews and Audits for Systems, Equipment, and Computer Resources*. The Allocated Baseline for software should be established at the Software Specification Review (SSR). For hardware the allocated baseline is normally established at the Preliminary Design Review (PDR), or no later than the Critical Design Review (CDR).

Product development starts once the design effort is completed. (For systems using new functions, procedures, and techniques, it may be necessary to actually perform some trial coding and testing in order to complete the design.) For hardware this building effort is called fabrication and for software it is called coding and testing. Testing is further subdivided into Computer Software Unit (CSU) testing and Computer Software Component (CSC) integration and testing. After the items are built, formalized testing takes place in accordance with approved test plans and procedures. A government Test Readiness Review (TRR) is conducted to determine the developer's readiness to perform formalized acceptance testing. Completion of software testing will lead to system integration and

testing. Both Functional Configuration Audits (FCA) and Physical Configuration Audits (PCA) will be conducted on hardware and software configuration items to establish the respective Product Baselines. After a system level Formal Qualification Review (FQR), the integrated system is turned over to the government for operational testing as defined in the system's Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP). Successful completion of this testing indicates that the product is fully defined and ready to be manufactured. For hardware, the production line would begin to assemble carbon copy items. For software, turning out copies is a trivial process. The product is complete and needs only to be duplicated on the required media for transfer to the target system computer.

### 5.3 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Figure 5-2 depicts the activities and products associated with the CE and D/V phases. The CE and D/V phase activities are system oriented to:

- (a) Define overall project objectives;
- (b) Determine project feasibility;

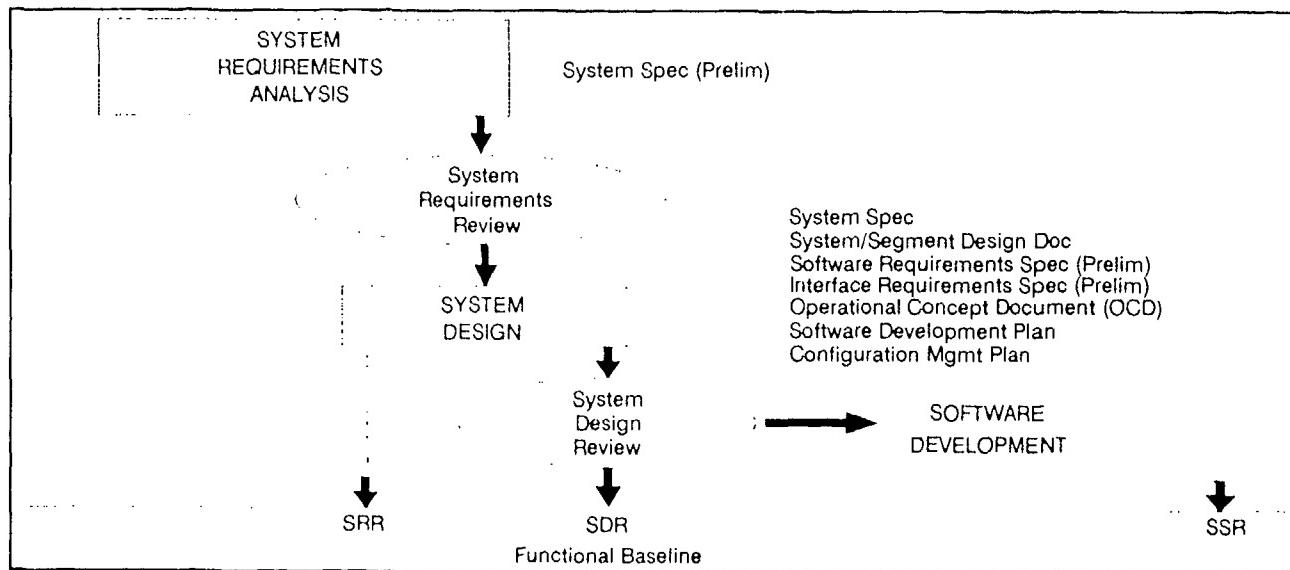


Fig. 5-2 System Requirements

- (c) Develop acquisition development strategy;
- (d) Establish resource cost and schedule;
- (e) Define the interrelationships between hardware and software;
- (f) Define technical and business functions and performance.

The first step is to generate the system level requirements and reflect them in a System/Segment Specification (SSS) (Type A Specification). It doesn't make any difference whether it is a hardware only, a software only, or a hardware and software system; the most important and critical aspect of weapon system development is to "nail down" the system requirements which must first be finalized at the functional level, before being allocated to hardware and software. Recognize that newer software development practices use trial coding and testing as a method of refining derived software requirements.

The requirements, finalized through a series of engineering studies and tradeoffs, include:

(a) **Requirements Refinement** - The overall system requirements, including constraints, should be examined to identify the factors that drive requirements for computer resources. These factors may include system interfaces, interoperability, communication functions, personnel functions, the anticipated level and urgency of change, and requirements for reliability and responsive support.

(b) **Operational Concept Analysis** - The operational concept should be analyzed in order to determine the role of computer resources. Particular attention is paid to requirements for mission preparation, operator

interface, control functions, and mission analysis.

(c) **Tradeoff and Optimization** - The effects of system constraints such as the operations concept, the support concept, performance requirements, logistics, availability and maturity of technology, and limitations on cost, schedule, and resources are determined. Alternative computer resources approaches are studied to:

- meet operational, interoperability, and support requirements;
- determine how the system requirements for reliability and maintainability will be satisfied;
- determine how requirements for system security will be met;

A determination will also be made regarding the suitability of standard computer languages and instruction set architectures.

(d) **Risk** - For each approach, the risk associated with computer resources is evaluated. Risk areas include compiler maturity, availability and maturity of the software support tools, loosely defined or incomplete interface definitions, and lack of adequate computer memory or throughput capability.

### 5.3.1 System Design

System Design begins on or about the time of the SRR. The major function of System Design is to establish the functional baseline of the system by updating and approving the system specification and the operational concept; by developing the initial subsystem/segment designs; and by refining the systems

engineering planning activities to be employed during system's development. Typical products are:

- (a) System Specification;
- (b) System/Segment Designs;
- (c) Configuration Management Plan (CMP);
- (d) Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP);
- (e) Preliminary Software Requirement Specification (SRS);
- (f) Preliminary Interface Requirements Specification (IRS);

#### **5.4 SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT**

Before discussing software development, some definitions are in order:

**Computer Software Configuration Item (CSCI)** - A configuration item for computer software.

**Computer Software Component (CSC)** - A distinct part of a computer software configuration item (CSCI). CSCs may be further decomposed into other CSCs and Computer Software Units.

**Computer Software Unit** - An element specified in the design of a Computer Software Component (CSC) that is separately testable. A CSU is the lowest level of software decomposition.

Weapon system software is partitioned into CSCIs based on the program office's management strategy. Each CSCI is managed individually and follows its own development process. A software development process is

defined in DOD-STD-2167A and consists of eight major activities: **Systems Requirements Analysis/Design, Software Requirements Analysis, Preliminary Design, Detailed Design, Coding and CSU Testing, CSC Integration and Testing, and CSCI Testing, Systems Integration and Testing**. These steps typically occur during FSD, although they may occur one or more times during each of the system life cycle phases [4]. This is especially true if software prototyping is performed during the Concept Demonstration and Validation Phase. The steps are not linear since software development is iterative in nature and any step may be repeated many times during the course of system development. For many software developments it is necessary to plan for these iterations prior to establishing a firm allocated baseline.

Managing software is very similar to managing hardware; both require discipline and control in order to succeed. An important part of the control process is the formal determination of whether or not the developer is ready to proceed to the next step. This is usually determined through a series of design reviews and audits. Software reviews and audits can occur in conjunction with hardware reviews, but they do not necessarily have to. It is important that appropriate system level reviews be held at strategic intervals. This will focus everyone's attention on system design and leads to timely baselines for the hardware, the software, and all the interfaces. Software development has two major reviews that are separate from hardware reviews: the Software Specification Review (SSR) and the Test Readiness Review (TRR).

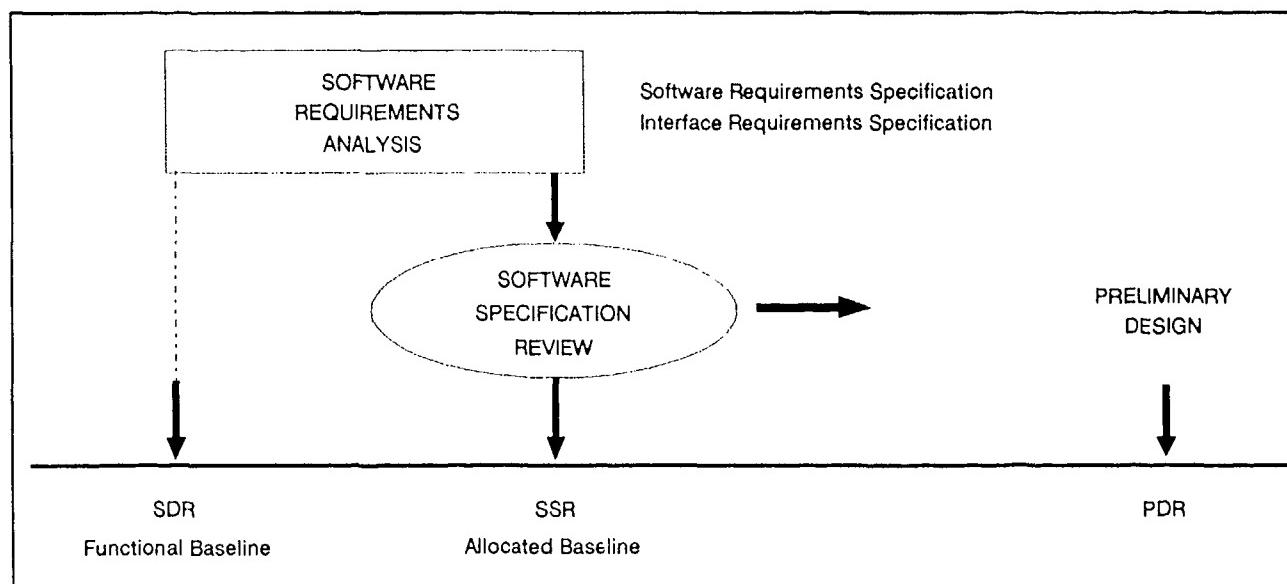
The SSR is a formal review of a CSCI's requirements as specified in the software specifications. A collective SSR for a group of configuration items, addressing each configuration item individually, may be held

when such an approach is advantageous to the government. Its purpose is to establish the allocated baseline for preliminary CSCI design by demonstrating to the government the adequacy of the software specifications.

The TRR is a formal review of the contractor's readiness to begin formal CSCI testing. It is conducted after software test procedures are available and CSC integration testing is complete. The purpose of the TRR

based on the System Specification. The means of testing and examining the software are also identified. During requirements analysis, prototype versions of high risk areas, user interfaces, and/or systems skeletons may be partially designed and coded. Prototyping is an excellent tool for performing requirements analysis.

The developer should also identify support tools and resources, and establish timing and



**Fig. 5-3 Software Requirements Analysis**

is to determine whether the contractor is ready to begin formal CSCI testing that can be witnessed by the government. A technical understanding must be reached on the informal test results, and on the validity and the degree of completeness of such documents as an operator's manual, a user's manual, and a computer programmer's manual.

#### 5.4.1 Software Requirements Analysis

The first step in the software development cycle is the **Software Requirements Analysis** (Figure 5-3). The purpose of the Software Requirements Analysis is to establish detailed functional, performance, interface, and qualification requirements for each CSCI

sizing estimates. The Program Manager must ensure that all software requirements, as reflected in the software development specifications, are traceable to the system specification and that the Software Development Plan is updated to identify the required resources, facilities, personnel, development schedule and milestones, and software tools. The developer may also customize the techniques, methodologies, standards and procedures to be used in software development.

The outputs of the Software Requirements Analysis are final versions of the software specifications, and an updated Software Development Plan. These documents will be reviewed at the SSR. The Computer Resour-

ces Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP) may also be updated.

#### 5.4.2 Preliminary Design

After the software allocated baseline is established, the developer has traditionally proceeded into the **Software Preliminary Design** as shown in Figure 5-4. Preliminary design activity determines the overall structure of the software to be built. Based on the requirements, the developer may partition the software into components and define the function of each component and the relationships between them. This is called functional decomposition. Input and output relationships with external devices (such as displays and sensors) are refined according to the hardware configuration and software structure. Timing and memory budgets for components are established so that the software requirements can be satisfied within the hardware constraints. If a technique such as Object Oriented Design (OOD) is used, functional decomposition doesn't really apply. Instead objects and classes are established along with clear definition of data requirements.

The developer should provide a preliminary design that insures that requirements from

the software specifications can be traced down to the software components of each CSCI. In effect the early work on preliminary design can be used to validate the allocated baseline. The software design is reflected in the preliminary Software Design Document (SDD) and Interface Design Document (IDD). These documents will describe the system architecture, memory and processing time allocations, interrupt requirements, timing and sequencing considerations, and input/output constraints for each software component. The developer should also generate a Software Test Plan (STP) outlining the proposed test program and establishing test requirements for software integration and testing.

The outputs of the contractor's efforts are preliminary versions of the software design documents and the Software Test Plan. These documents are reviewed during the PDR. Throughout the development effort, the developer will conduct informal design reviews, inspections, and walkthroughs to evaluate the progress and correctness of the design for each software component. The results of these inspections will serve as the basis for material presented at the PDR.

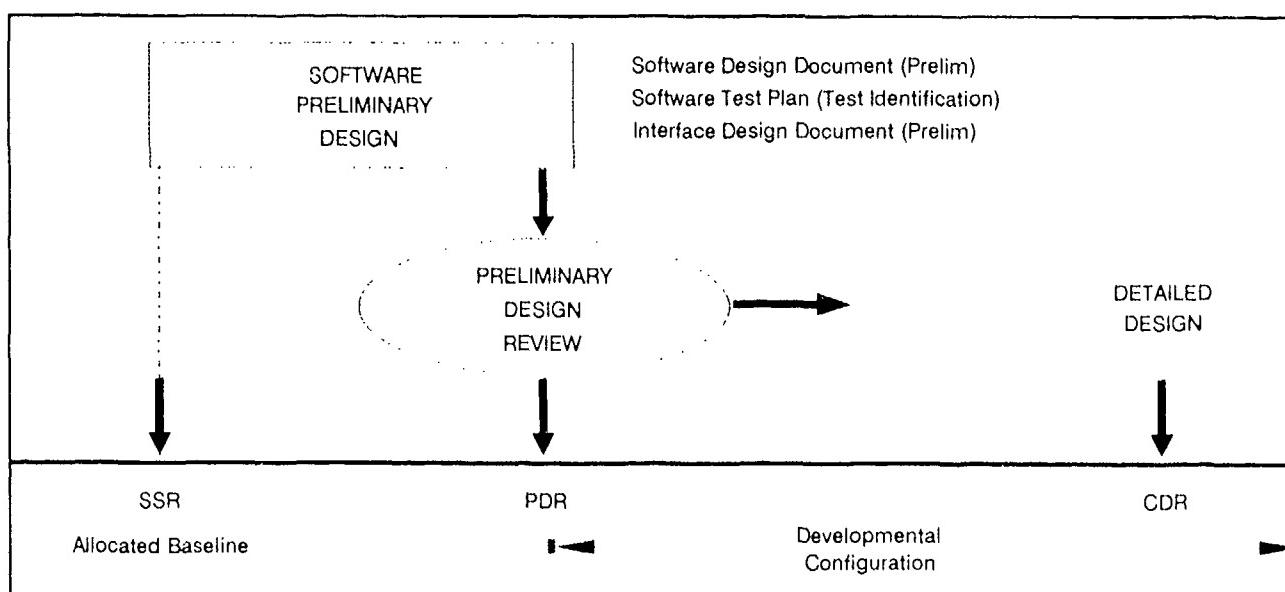


Fig. 5-4 Software Preliminary Design

### 5.4.3 Detailed Design

The purpose of the **Detailed Design** (Figure 5-5) activity is to logically define and complete a software design that satisfies the allocated requirements. The level of design detail must be such that development of the computer program can be accomplished by someone other than the original designer. Component functions, inputs and outputs, plus any constraints (such as memory size or response time) should be defined. Logical, static, and dynamic relationships among the components should be specified and the component and system integration test procedures generated.

A complete detailed design includes not only a description of the computer processes to be performed but also detailed descriptions of the data to be processed. A data dictionary is an effective way of documenting this needed design information. For software that processes or manipulates a large amount of interrelated data, the structure of the data itself should be defined.

Components which must be coded in assembly language or another "non-standard" lan-

guage should be clearly defined and the reasons for the departure from the standard justified. Any special conditions that must be followed when programming the component should be similarly described and clearly documented [5]. These exceptions are normally addressed in the Software Development Plan.

During the entire design and development process the contractor should document the development of each unit, component, and CSCI in software development folders (SDFs). A separate SDF should be maintained for each division or breakdown of the software. These divisions or breakdowns are determined by the particular design methodology used. The SDFs are normally maintained for the duration of the contract and made available for government review upon request. A set of SDFs may include the following information:

- (a) Design considerations and constraints;
- (b) Design documentation and data;
- (c) Schedule and status information;

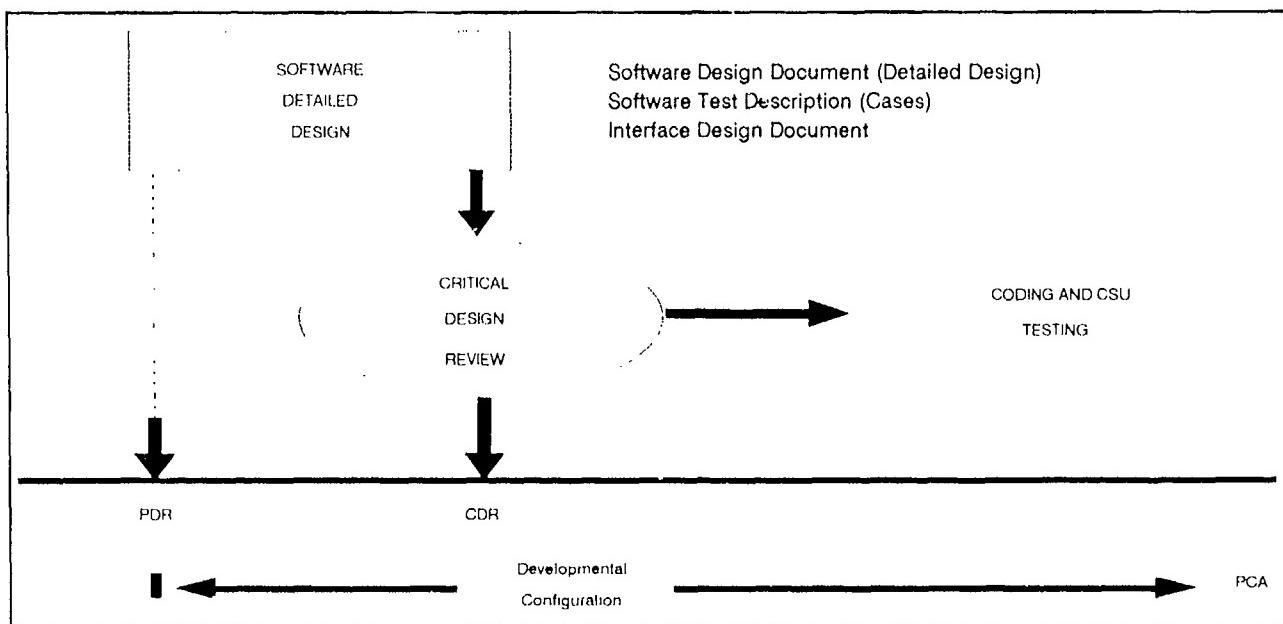
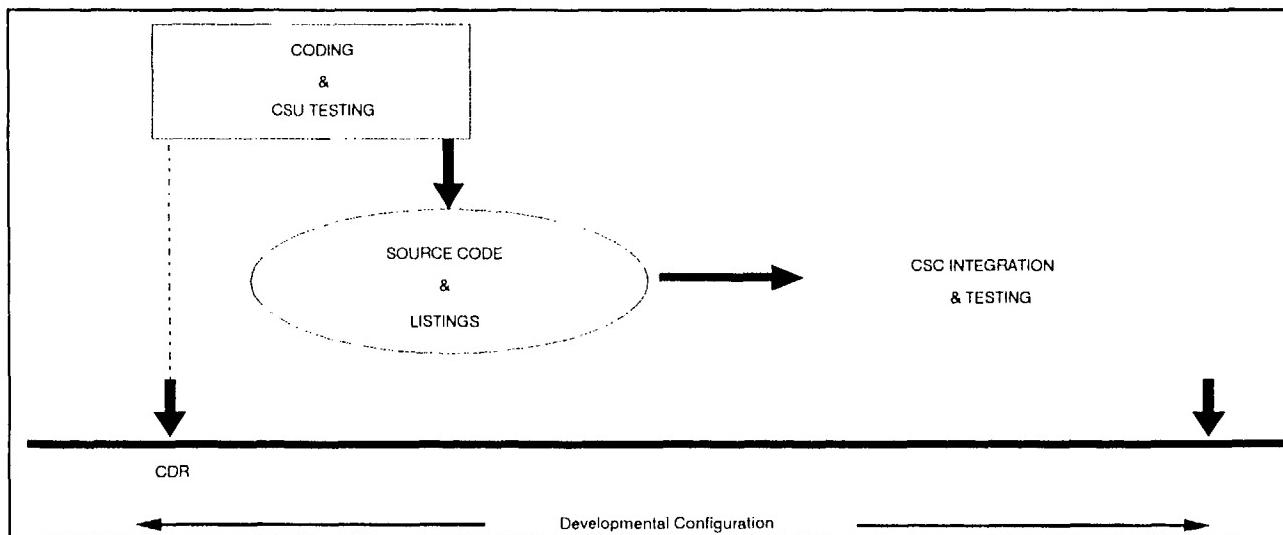


Fig. 5-5 Software Detailed Design

- (d) Test requirements and responsibilities;
- (e) Test cases, procedures and results.

The contractor documents and implements procedures for establishing and maintaining SDFs in a Software Development Library. The library is a management tool used by the contractor to assist in developmental configuration management. It serves as a "storage house" to control access of software, documentation, and associated tools and pro-

presented in the design specification, programming of each unit is accomplished by the assigned programmer in the specified programming language, usually Ada. As the programming of each unit is completed, the programmer examines the program for errors. The program may be compiled when the programmer is satisfied that the source program correctly implements the detailed design. Compiling translates the source program to its machine executable form, the object program.



**Fig. 5-6 Coding and CSU Testing**

cedures used to facilitate the orderly development and subsequent support of software [6].

A CDR (or a series of smaller CDRs) is conducted at the conclusion of the detailed design. The CDR should assure that the software design satisfies the requirements of both the system level specification and the software development specifications.

#### 5.4.4 Coding and CSU Testing

The purpose of programming is to translate the detailed software design into a programming language such as Ada. It is during the programming activity that listings of the source program are generated (Figure 5-6). Based on the detailed software design

If the detailed design is in error, is ambiguous, or is not sufficiently complete to permit the programming to continue without further definition, the programmer should consult the original designer. The resolution should be documented, and all affected requirements, design, and test documentation updated accordingly.

The purpose of the unit testing activity is to eliminate any errors that may exist in the units as they are programmed. These errors may be due to programmer mistakes or deficiencies in the software requirements and design documentation. Usually, the test of a unit is the responsibility of the programmer who programmed the unit. Unit testing is the activity that permits the most control over test

conditions and visibility into software behavior. An efficient software development effort requires rigorous unit level test to detect most errors before CSC Integration and Test.

Besides producing the source and object code and their listings, the contractor develops and records in software development folders the informal test procedures for each unit test as well as the test results. The contractor will usually conduct informal code inspections or walkthroughs on each coded unit and component during several stages of its development. There are no formal reviews scheduled during this step of the development cycle.

#### 5.4.5 CSC Integration and Testing

Once the software is coded and each unit and component tested for compliance with its design requirements, the contractor should begin CSC Integration and Testing as illustrated in Figure 5-7. The purpose of CSC Integration and Testing is to combine the software units and components that have been independently tested into the total software product and to demonstrate that the combination fulfills the system design. The

integration is done in a phased manner with only a few components being combined at first, additional ones added after the initial combination has been tested, and the process repeated until all components have been integrated. The phasing of this integration should be based on the functional capabilities that can be demonstrated by specific groups. There may be some overlap with the previous step since some components may be ready for integration while others are still being coded. Most testing performed during Coding and CSU Testing, and CSC Integration and Testing is called "informal testing". This term doesn't imply that the testing is "casual" or "haphazard", but instead implies that the testing doesn't require government approval. Some formal testing may be accomplished during these steps, but most formal testing is usually accomplished during the next step.

#### 5.4.6 CSCI Testing

After completion of a successful TRR, the contractor will proceed with CSCI Testing (Figure 5-8), the last step of the software development cycle. The purpose is to perform formal tests, in accordance with the software test plans and procedures, on each

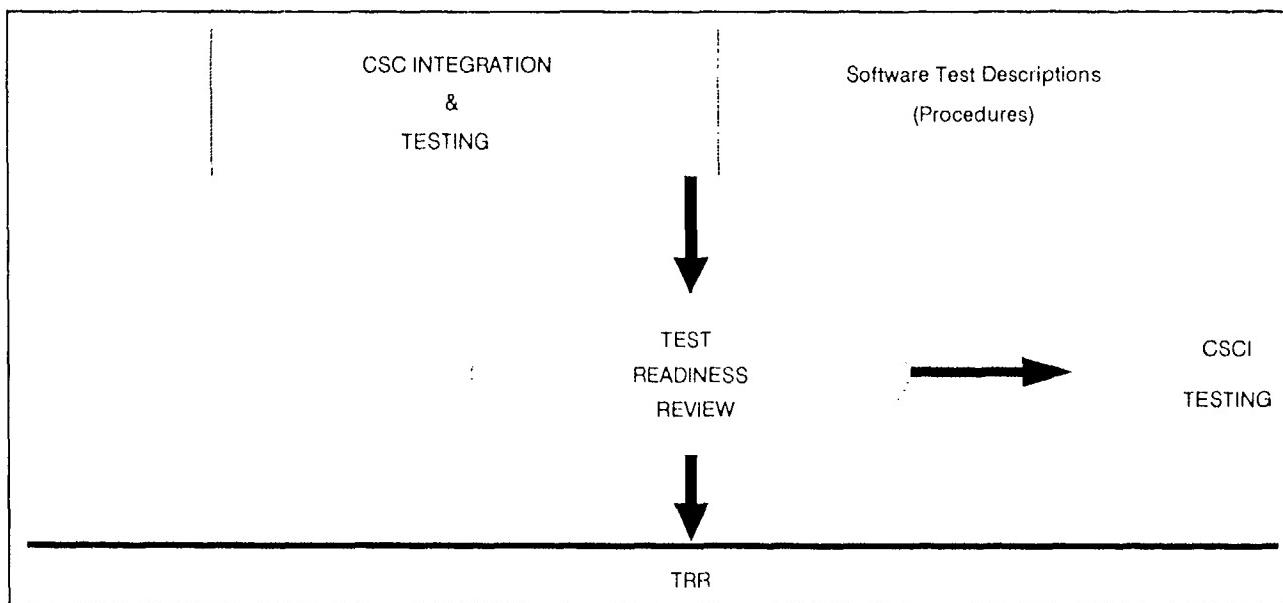


Fig. 5-7 CSC Integration and Testing

CSCI and to establish the software Product Baseline. Testing during this step is intended to show that the software satisfies the Software Requirements Specification and the Interface Requirements Specification.

Throughout CSCI testing, the contractor should be updating all previous software documentation, analyzing test data, generating the Software Test Reports (STR), and finalizing the Software Product Specification (SPS) (C-5 Specification). This will be the basis for the software Product Baseline normally established at the PCA, which may immediately follow, or be conducted concurrently with, the FCA for a software only development. Normally, the PCA occurs after the software is released for integration and testing with the system following the software FCA as illustrated in Figure 5-8. During the software FCA the government verifies that the CSCIs perform in accordance with their respective requirements and interface specifications by examining the test

results and reviewing the operational and support documentation. The PCA is the formal technical examination of the as-built software product against its design. This includes the product specification and the as-coded documentation.

The typical outputs of the contractor's efforts in CSCI Testing are the Software Test Report (STR), operational and support documentation such as the Computer System Operator's Manual (CSOM), the Software Users Manual (SUM), the Software Programmer's Manual (SPM), the Firmware Support Manual (FSM), the Computer Resources Integrated Support Document (CRISD), the Version Description Document (VDD), and the Software Product Specification (SPS). Except for updates and/or revisions, all deliverable documentation should be completed at this time. Appendix H contains a listing of the standardized software documentation, defined in DOD-STD-2167A, that may be required for software development programs.

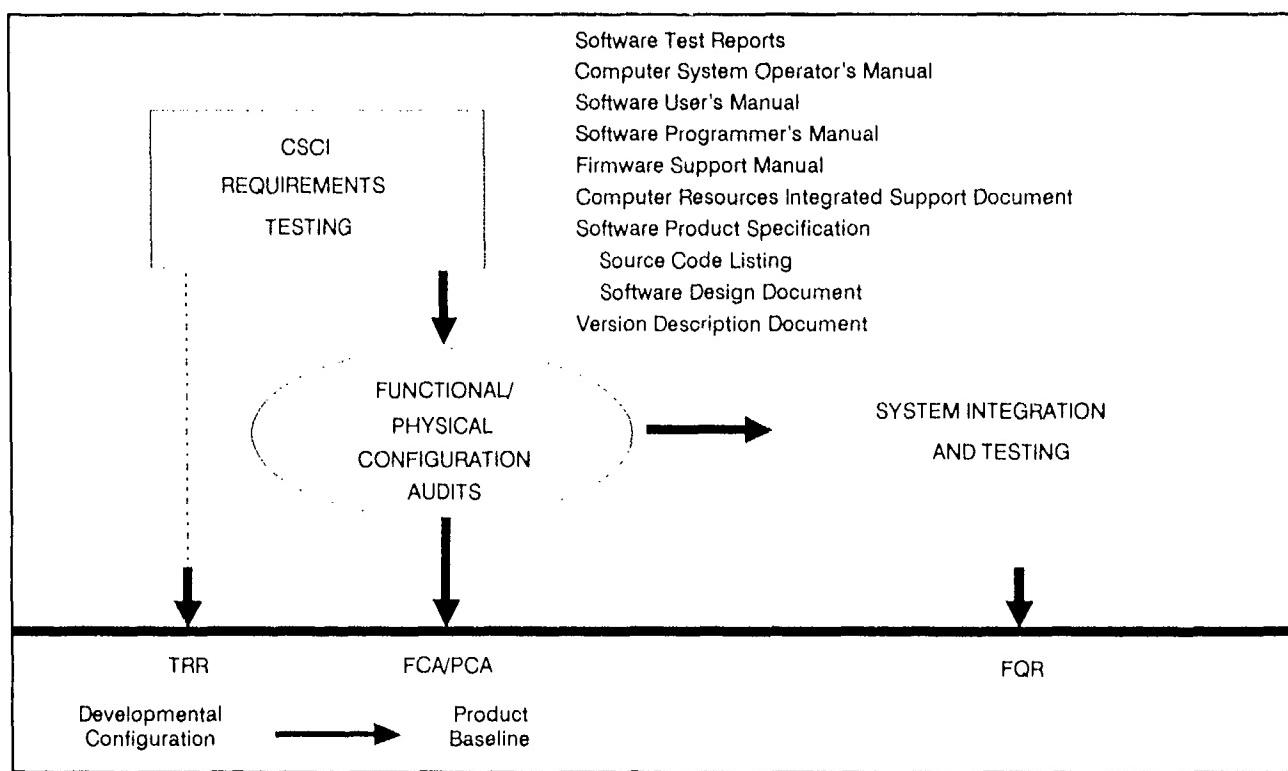


Fig. 5-8 CSCI Testing

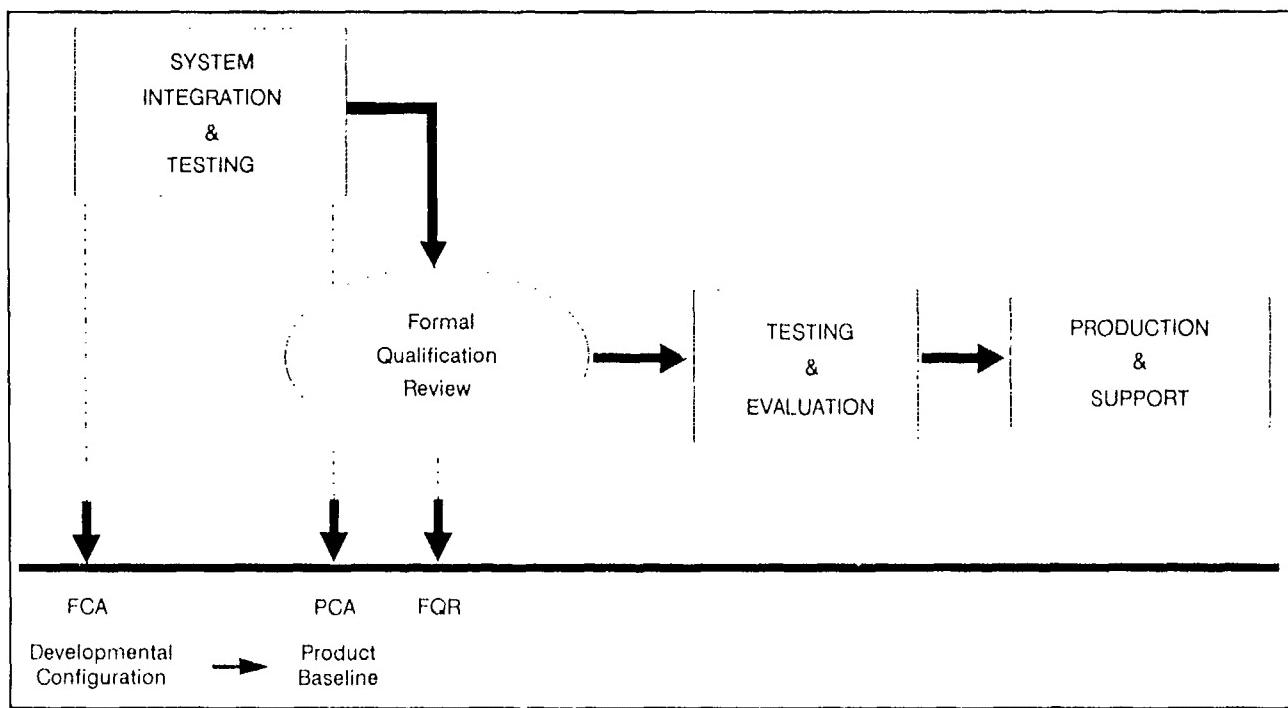
## 5.5 SYSTEM INTEGRATION & TESTING

The purpose of System Integration and Testing is to ensure that the developed software works with the system in the environment that it was designed for (Figure 5-9). The system is turned over to the government after an acceptable Formal Qualification Review (FQR). The FQR is a system-level review that verifies that the actual system performance complies with the system requirements. For computer resources, it addresses the aspects of the software and hardware performance that have been tested after the FCA and PCA.

stipulated in the contract will be delivered to the government who will then assume configuration control responsibility. The contractor, however, will be available to support the government's test and evaluation efforts and to conduct any required acceptance tests.

## 5.6 TAILORING

The purpose of tailoring is to reduce the overall costs of an acquisition, primarily by reducing the amount and type of documentation being delivered by the contractor and by eliminating redundant or unnecessary testing



**Fig. 5-9 Systems Integration and Test**

A successful FQR is predicated on a determination that the system meets the specified requirements in the hardware, software and interface specifications.

The contractor's role will diminish significantly subsequent to the FQR. Contractor configuration control of the software should terminate once the product baseline is approved and the government assumes responsibility. All updated documentation, source and object code listings, and all other items

or procedures. Some questions whose answers will provide tailoring guidance are:

- Is all of the documentation described in DOD-STD-2167A necessary?
- What documentation is already available even if in a different format?
- Is it cost-effective to modify it?
- Is the contractor's format acceptable?

- (e) How many copies are actually needed?
- (f) How can DOD-STD-2167A be tailored?
- (g) Is a formal design review necessary for each CSCI?
- (h) How should they be scheduled?

DOD-STD-2167A should be tailored by deleting non-applicable requirements. How does a program manager determine which requirements are not applicable? Figure 5-10 illustrates the tailoring process.

Most tailoring is implemented through the statement of work (SOW). A thorough understanding of requirements (functional, perfor-

mance, test, documentation) is required in order to properly tailor the standards and specifications.

The first step is to ask if the requirement is appropriate? If not, then tailor it out through the SOW. If the requirement is appropriate, then ask if the requirement is adequate? If it is, then impose the requirement through the SOW. If the requirement is not adequate, ask if the requirement is too restrictive or too flexible? If it's too restrictive, delete it or modify it in the SOW. If it's too flexible, add to or modify the requirement in the SOW. Use careful judgment when tailoring a program. Don't arbitrarily tailor areas simply to reduce program costs. In the long run, this may increase life cycle costs.

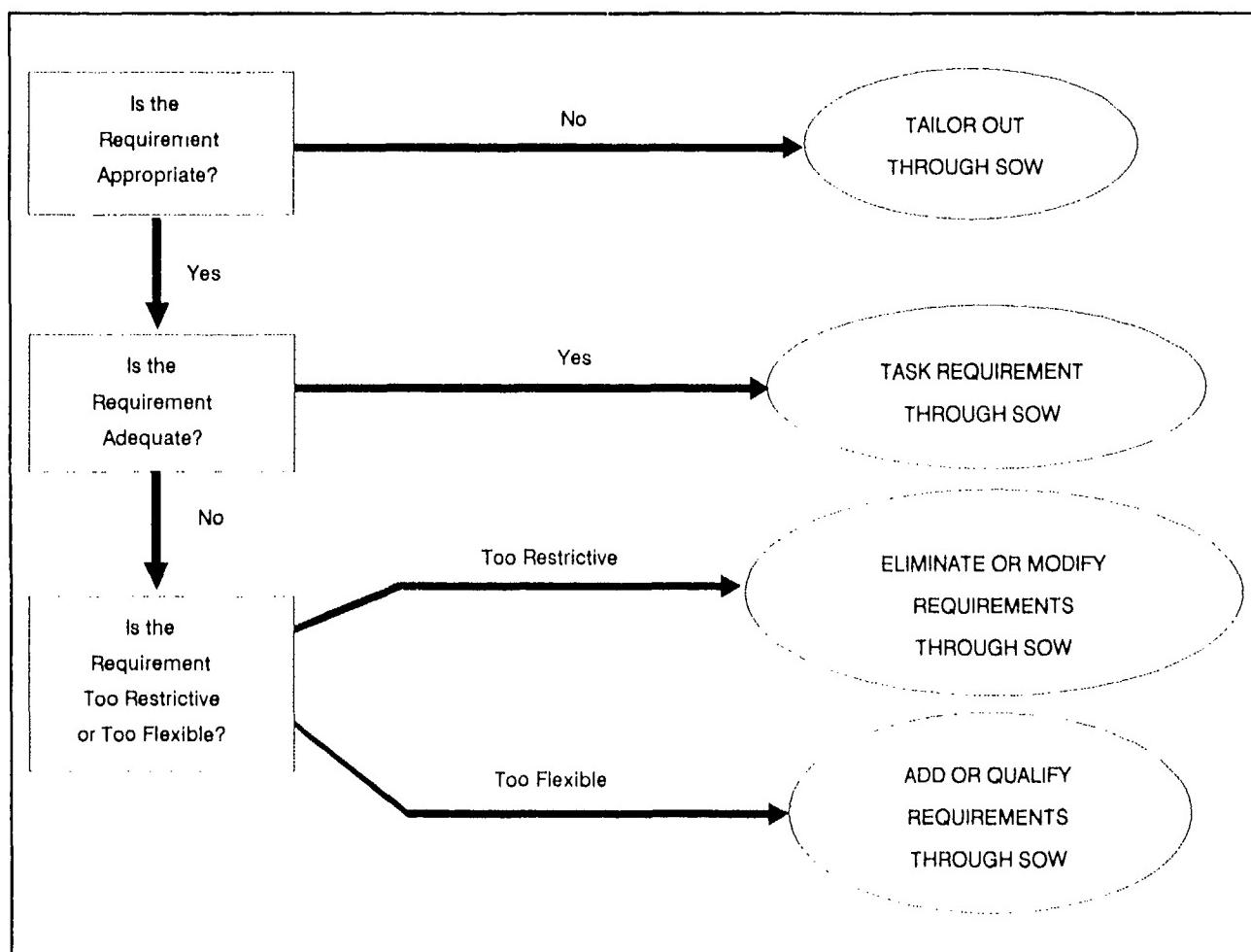


Fig. 5-10 Tailoring Process

## 5.7 SUMMARY

Software that is part of a weapon system is managed by partitioning into CSCIs. Each CSCI is managed individually and follows its own software development cycle. Software development activities can be broken down into six steps; any of which can be repeated as many times as necessary during the development cycle. These six steps are Software Requirements Analysis, Preliminary Design, Detailed Design, Coding and CSU Testing, CSC Integration and Testing, and CSCI Testing. These steps typically occur during the Full Scale Development Phase.

DOD-STD-2157A is the approved standard to be used by DOD agencies for software development. It is to be used in conjunction with DOD-STD-2168, *Software Quality Program Plan*. These two standards are not intended to discourage the use of any particular software development method, but instead, to aid the Program Manager in developing and maintaining quality software. They should be used throughout the acquisition life cycle and tailored according to system needs.

It is especially important to develop the product as a system. Never lose sight of the fact that hardware and software development are intimately related. Although they are developed in parallel, software is almost always in the critical path and it is up to the

Program Manager to insure proper integration of the two through carefully planned reviews and audits. The talents of an independent verification and validation (IV&V) activity may be used to aid in this process.

## 5.8 REFERENCES

1. Fairley, Richard E., *Software Engineering Concepts*, Tyngsboro, Mass: McGraw Hill Book Co., 1985.
2. Boehm, Barry, "Software Engineering Education: Some Industry Needs," in *Software Engineering Education: Needs and Objectives*, Edited by P. Freeman and A. Wasserman, Springer-Verlag, Berlin 1976.
3. DOD-STD-2167A, *Defense System Software Development*, 29 February 1988.
4. DOD Directive 5000.29, *Management of Computer Resources in major defense Systems*, 26 April 1976.
5. Rubey, Raymond J., *A Guide to the Management of Software in Weapon Systems*, 2nd Edition, March 1985.
6. Ferens, Daniel V., *Mission Critical Computer Resources Software Support Management*, Air Force Institute of Technology, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, First Edition, May 1987.

# CHAPTER 6

---

## SOFTWARE TEST AND EVALUATION

Software test and evaluation are two of the most difficult, frustrating, and expensive activities that are performed during system development. Unfortunately, they may also be the most misunderstood functions of the entire system acquisition cycle. Before discussing the details of software testing, let us review the software development life cycle and see how the software test process fits in.

### 6.1 TEST PLANNING

Test and Evaluation (T&E) planning is initiated at the inception of the development process. During the Concept Exploration (CE) Phase the initial draft of the Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP) is developed. The TEMP is the basic planning document for all T&E related to a particular system acquisition and is used by the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD) and all DOD components in planning, reviewing, and approving all T&E activities. The TEMP provides the basis and authority for all other detailed T&E planning documents.

The TEMP addresses two types of computer resources: system support and embedded computer resources.

#### 6.1.1 System Support Computer Resources

System support computer resources include all the government and contractor planned software and computer resources, required to fully test the overall system. These test resources include [1]:

**Test Support Equipment** - All unique or modified test support equipment required to conduct the planned test program including any special calibration and software requirements.

**Threat Systems** - All threat simulators against which the system will be tested including the number and timing requirements.

**Simulators, Models, and Testbeds** - All system simulations required including computer-driven simulation models and

hardware-in-the-loop testbeds identified by specific test phase.

**Special Requirements** - All non-instrumentation capabilities and resources required such as special data processing or databases.

For all of these test resources the system requirements are compared with existing and programmed capabilities in order to identify any major shortfalls.

### 6.1.2 Mission Critical Computer Resources

The initial draft of the TEMP will include a preliminary Software Test and Evaluation Plan in Part III. This plan describes the anticipated software testing necessary to demonstrate the ability of the mission critical computer resources to achieve the system objectives.. Detailed information on the TEMP may be found in DOD Directive 5000.3-M-3, *Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP) Guidelines*, 26 Jan 1990.

During the Demonstration/Validation (D/V) Phase, the TEMP is updated to reflect further refinements in the objectives and evaluation criteria of the weapon system computer resources and to include plans for Developmental Test and Evaluation (DT&E) and Operational Test and Evaluation (OT&E). As part of contractor involvement, a Software Development Plan (SDP) is generated along with a Software Test Plan (STP). The contractor developed STP must reflect the overall Software Test and Evaluation Plan as stated in the TEMP. Along with the SDP, they become the basic documents governing the conduct of the mission critical computer resources development and test activities.

Once the Software Requirements Specification (SRS) and the Interface Requirements Specification (IRS) have been generated and

approved, the preliminary software design is initiated (Figure 6-1). Preliminary design is the development of an overall skeletal structure or architecture for the software. The overall structure is defined to include such

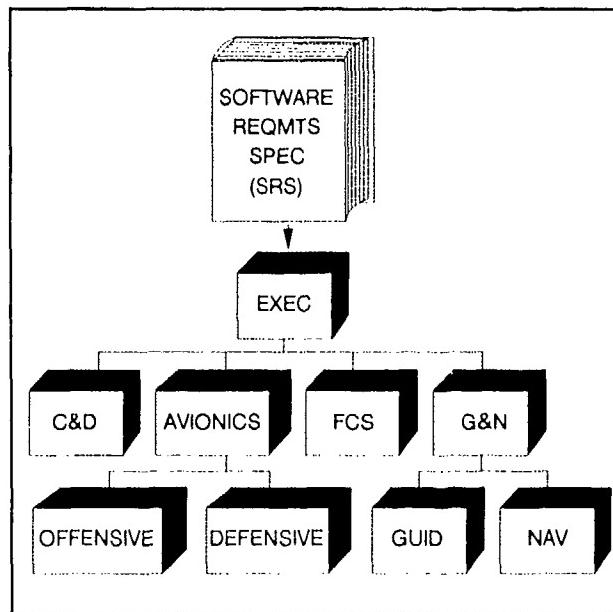


Fig. 6-1 Preliminary Design

things as the types, names and number of software modules; their calling sequence and their input and output parameters; their approximate execution times; and other pertinent relationships that should exist between the various modules. Since Ada modules and packages can be compiled without the requirement that lower level code be available, preliminary design using an Ada-based Program Design Language (PDL) is very valuable. Please note that, if a technique such as Object Oriented Design is used, the procedure just described may not really apply. Instead objects and classes are established along with a clear definition of data requirements.

Official government approval will be provided once a preliminary design has been completed and a Preliminary Design Review (PDR) has been held. The PDR should be approached with care and preparation since its completion is a signal to the contractor to proceed with the detailed design.

During the detailed design (Figure 6-2), the overall architecture developed during the preliminary design is fleshed out with detailed algorithms and logic implementation details. Figure 6-2 shows the detail process and data flow of a typical task using Buhr structure graphs [2]. In the past, pseudo-code (English-like programming statements) and traditional flowcharts were often used in this phase. DOD policy, however, now requires that the detailed design also be developed using Ada

group computer software component (CSC) testing can start. This testing is usually informal in nature and is usually performed by the programmer. Formalized testing, as described in the Software Development Plan and the Software Test Plan, can begin after the completion of coding and informal programmer testing. The contractor can conduct his own formalized testing but any formal testing which is to be witnessed by the government, doesn't begin until a formal Test Readi-

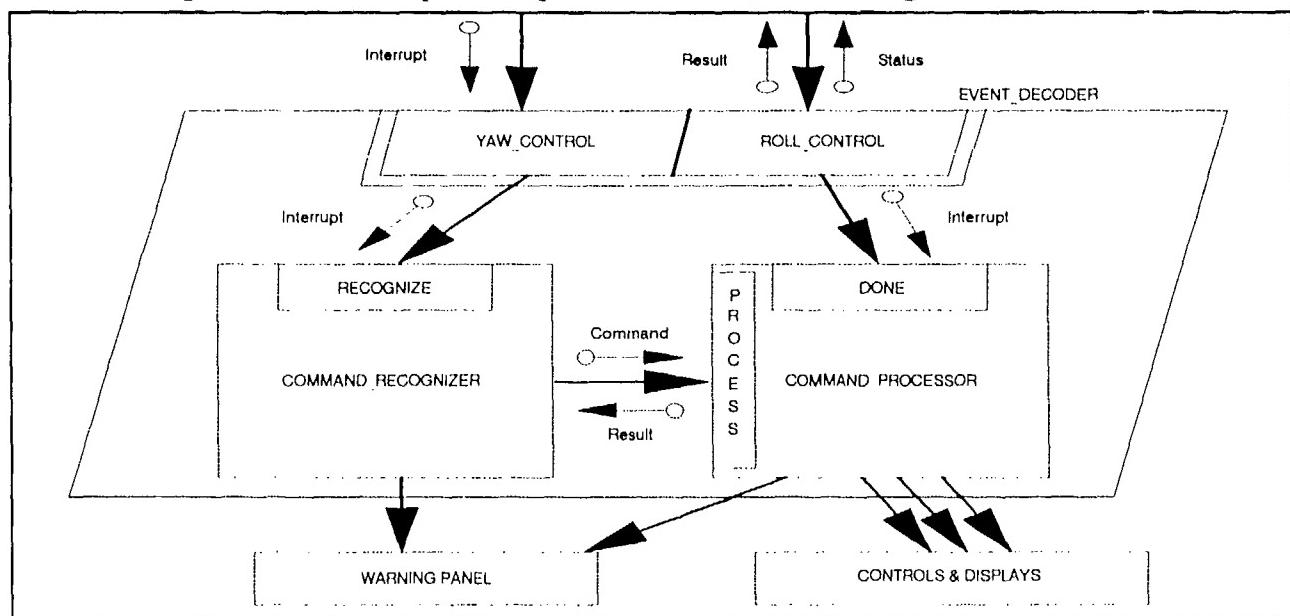


Fig. 6-2 Detailed Design

or an Ada based PDL. Once again, use of Ada as a design language will be immensely useful because the actual coding of the detailed design will be a natural follow-on to the detailed design. During both the preliminary and detailed design phases, software practices such as inspections and walk-throughs (which will be discussed in detail later in this chapter) will be immensely useful in finding errors or inconsistencies in the overall system design.

Coding initiates the process of building sub-modules. These sub-modules are progressively combined with other sub-modules to form larger and more complex modules and blocks of software (Figure 6-3). With each submodule or unit coded, individual and

ness Review (TRR) has been conducted. The purpose of the TRR is to determine whether the contractor has completed his own testing and has the resources and the plans and procedures to formally demonstrate to the

```

task WARNING is
    entry FAULT_IN_SENSOR;
    entry OUT_OF_LIMITS (ON_SENSOR: in SENSOR_NAME);
end WARNING;

-- 

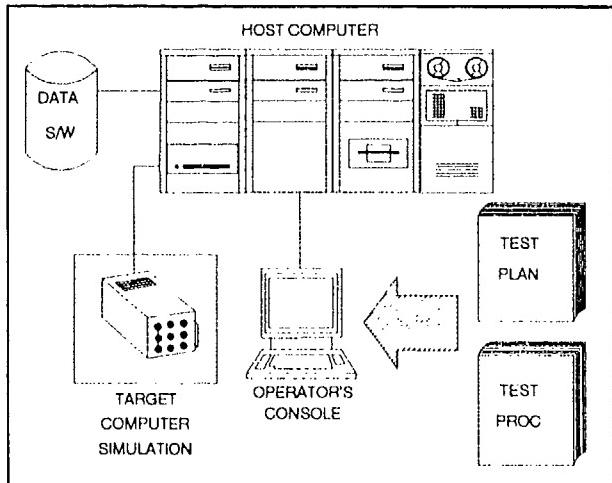
task RECORDING is
    entry LOG_STATUS (OF_SENSOR: in SENSOR_VALUE;
                      WITH_VALUE: in SENSOR_VALUE;
                      WITH_STATE in SENSOR_STATE);
end RECORDING.

```

Fig. 6-3 Coding

government that the software works as an entity.

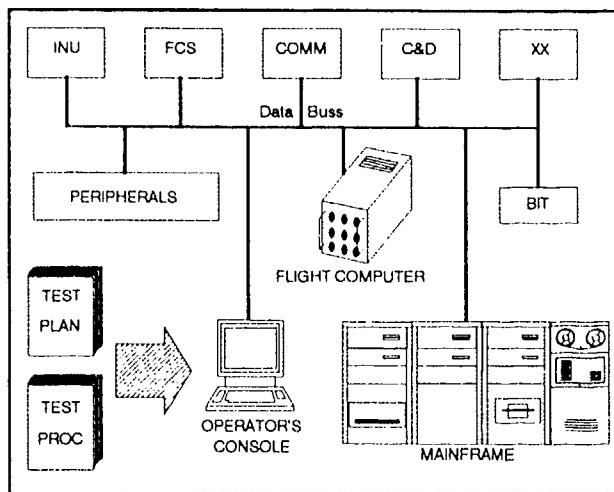
Software integration testing exercises a single Computer Software Configuration Item (CSCI). This type of testing usually requires a dedicated mainframe computer since other software or subsystem simulations will have to be used (Figure 6-4). The actual hardware typically is not available at this time and a simulation or emulation is substituted. The target computer simulation is called an interpretive computer simulation (ICS). One of the primary purposes of this detailed software system testing is to ensure that the software is inherently sound and that it demonstrates the



**Fig. 6-4 Software Integration Testing**

potential for performing its function once it is married to the system hardware in a test setup called a hot bench.

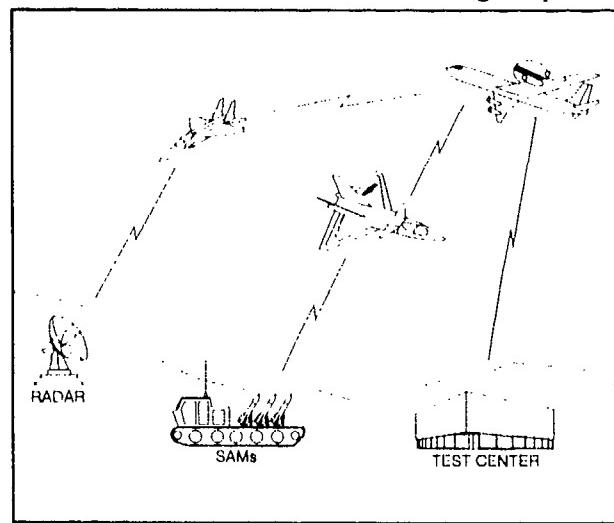
Hot bench integration or testing is perhaps one of the most frustrating parts of software T&E (Figure 6-5). Once the software is married to the actual hardware, the difficult part begins. The first step is to establish a hot bench or Systems Integration Lab (SIL), as it is sometimes called. The next step is to populate the SIL with actual black boxes, cable runs, power supplies, displays and system computers, configured as closely as possible to the final article. Unfortunately, a



**Fig. 6-5 Hot Bench Integration**

laboratory environment can only approximate the real world so a laboratory is a relatively artificial and benign environment. In spite of this, hot bench testing is the key to proving that the hardware and software designs satisfy system requirements.

System DT&E and OT&E can begin once hot bench testing is successfully completed (Figure 6-6). Although the two tests are sometimes combined because of schedule constraints, the objectives of the tests are different and the kinds and amount of data required by each is different. Usually the level of detail required for DT&E is much more than that required for OT&E. This means that the hardware and software testing required



**Fig. 6-6 DT&E/OT&E Testing**

for DT&E is usually more stringent and more extensive than that required for OT&E.

## 6.2 COST OF SOFTWARE FIXES

Before discussing the details of software testing, it would be instructive to examine the cost of removing errors from software. Figure 6-7 shows the cost of a typical software development project broken down by the various phases of development [3]. The cost of finding and correcting a software problem in the early phases is insignificant when compared to the cost of finding and correcting the same problem once the software has been delivered. Although these are not absolute numbers that apply all development projects, the message is clear; "Spend more time up front finding errors and you will reduce your overall cost."

A question that may be asked is, "Why does it cost so much less to find and correct errors in the earlier stages of software development than it does after system delivery?" Several reasons that have been put forth:

(a) At the beginning the pressure is less intense. Since there is little or no code to examine, there is more time to look for the problem.

(b) The amount of paperwork and the amount of detail to be examined is much less. Top-level design requirements, interfaces, and test requirements are being examined without regard to implementation details.

(c) Errors introduced at the top level, such as in the requirements or overall system design, will be propagated manifold into the detailed design and coding of the discrete software components.

(d) Software programmers seem to undergo a psychological change once code has been generated and computer based testing has begun [4]. They seem to be less sensitive about their mistakes when dealing with requirements and design considerations than they are about errors in coding.

(e) Major resources are tied up in testing once computer based testing begins. Mainframe computers, weapon system hardware, technicians, and system analysts can escalate cost very quickly. Once a problem is found there is tremendous psychological pressure to correct it as soon as possible. Unfortunately, the amount of paperwork involved in the correction procedure is immense and the impact of one software error usually propagates

SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT	DEV \$	ERRORS INTRODUCED	ERRORS FOUND	RELATIVE COST OF ERRORS
REQUIREMENTS ANALYSIS	5%	55%	18%	1.0
DESIGN	25%	30%	10%	1 - 1.5
CODE & UNIT TEST	10%			
INTEGRATION & TEST	50%	10%	50%	1.5 - 5.0
VALIDATION & DOCUMENTATION	10%			
OPERATIONS & MAINTENANCE		5%	22%	10 - 100

Fig. 6-7 Costs of Software Fixes

throughout other modules. Corrections are not always complete or totally accurate [4].

In summary, it is very clear that the greatest return on the dollars invested in finding and correcting software problems occur during the early stages of software development: the requirements and design phases.

### 6.3 SOURCES OF SOFTWARE ERRORS

If one examines where the typical software errors occur, it is somewhat surprising to learn that they also occur mostly in the early stages of software development. As can be seen from Figure 6-8, about 40% of all software errors are attributed to problems in specification. Twenty-eight percent are due to incomplete or erroneous specifications and 12% are due to intentional deviations from the specification. Violations of programming standards contribute another 10%. Errors due to coding and programming mistakes (i.e., erroneous data accessing, erroneous logic, erroneous computations, improper interrupts, wrong constants and data values) comprise only about 38% of all errors [5].

Comparison of this figure with the previous figure is very revealing. It tells us that the bulk of the errors occur during those phases of

CATEGORY	PERCENTAGE
INCOMPLETE/ERRONEOUS SPEC	28
INTENTIONAL DEVIATION FROM SPEC	12
VIOLATION OF PROGRAMMING STDS	10
ERRONEOUS DATA ACCESSING	10
ERRONEOUS LOGIC	12
ERRONEOUS COMPUTATIONS	9
INVALID TESTING	4
IMPROPER INTERRUPTS	4
WRONG CONSTANTS/DATA VALUES	3
DOCUMENTATION	8
TOTAL	100

Fig. 6-8 Sources of Software Errors

software development when errors are the least expensive to fix. The conclusion is very obvious: if more time and effort are put into requirements definition and design, fewer mistakes will be made and those that are made will be cheaper to correct. The more you pay now, the less that you will pay later.

### 6.4 TYPES OF TESTING

Software testing can be broken up into three general categories: human testing, software only testing, and integration testing.

#### 6.4.1 Human Testing

Human testing is defined as an informal, non-computer-based method of examining computer program architectures, designs and internal and external interfaces for the express purpose of determining how well they reflect overall system requirements [4]. Human testing is comprised of inspections, walk-throughs, desk checking, peer ratings, and design reviews.

##### 6.4.1.1 Inspections

During an inspection, the programmer explains to a group of three or four peers the overall approach, rationale, choice of algorithms, logic, and overall module structure of the program. The purpose is to ensure correctness and consistency in structure, coding conventions such as variable definitions and use, programming standards and procedures, and overall unity of design. At the end of the inspection, which usually lasts about two hours, all errors, inconsistencies, and omissions are listed and given to the programmer for correction. Under no circumstances is the list of errors ever allowed to be reviewed by the programmer's supervisor or anyone else. The purpose of the inspection is to improve the final product in a non-threatening en-

vironment and not to appraise the programmer's performance. Statistics are also collected in order determine the quality of the product and the progress being made in the development process.

#### **6.4.1.2 Walk-throughs**

During a walk-through, the group of three or four peers come prepared with test cases so that they can "play computer" and mentally step through the design and the logic flow. As is done in inspections, all errors, inconsistencies, and omissions are summarized and given to the programmer for correction. The results are also confidential and are never seen by anyone outside the group, including the programmer's supervisor. The climax of both inspections and walk-throughs is a meeting of the minds between all the participants [4]. Statistics may once again be gathered.

#### **6.4.1.3 Desk Checking**

Desk checking is the least productive of all human testing since it involves the programmer sitting at his desk and reviewing his work. It is human nature to miss errors that one has committed. Desk checking, however, can be performed individually at any time and without the need for convening a meeting with other individuals. It is better than doing nothing at all.

#### **6.4.1.4 Peer Ratings**

Peer ratings involve a group of programmers reviewing each other's work. Each programmer anonymously submits one or two modules for review. The peer group reviews each module and rates the overall quality while suggesting improvements. Results are tabulated and passed around. Like inspections and walk-throughs, peer reviews are

very beneficial in improving commonality, overall consistency, and program integrity.

There are other benefits to inspections, walk-throughs, and peer ratings beside the obvious one of finding errors and inconsistencies. The participants themselves benefit because they are exposed to other programming styles and new techniques which they may want to adapt for their own use.

#### **6.4.1.5 Design Reviews**

PDRs and CDRs are not normally considered by the government as part of the test process. This is unfortunate because, to the contractor, completion of the PDR is a signal that the preliminary design is acceptable and that he can proceed with the detailed design. Likewise, completion of the CDR is the contractor's signal that the detailed design is acceptable. Very often the government fails to perform a thorough review of all the documentation submitted prior to either the PDR or the CDR. PDRs and CDRs may be conducted superficially and the contractors may proceed into detailed design without a thorough review of the overall design and without assurances that overall system requirements are reflected in the design.

There is no immediate solution to this problem since it is often due to the lack of adequate manpower. Documentation review prior to design reviews may always be inadequate. Alternatives are to thoroughly review only critical portions of the design, thoroughly review only the module interfaces, or augment the engineering staff with outside help. If the funding is available, an Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V) contractor can be used. Outside consultants can be brought in, or help can be sought from the various military labs or software support agencies.

Another solution is to hold incremental PDRs and CDRs. By spreading out the reviews the available staff can pay more attention to details. This, of course, has to be weighed against overall schedule slippage. One must remember, however, that an incompletely reviewed software design is guaranteed to introduce schedule slippage anyway. As the commercial states, "You can pay me now, or you can pay me later."

#### 6.4.1.6 Benefits of Human Testing

Human testing is a very productive undertaking. In his book, *The Art of Software Testing*, Myers [3] discusses the following positive qualities of human testing:

- (a) Experience has shown that it is quite effective in finding errors and it should be used on every programming effort;
- (b) Since it is usually applied between the start of design and the beginning of computer based testing, it substantially contributes to productivity and reliability;
- (c) It may find 30 to 70% of design and coding errors;
- (d) There is a higher probability of proper error correction since they are found early in the development phase. Programmers tend to make more errors correcting errors found during computer-based software testing;
- (e) It finds errors in clusters or batches as opposed to computer-based testing which finds errors one at a time;
- (f) It lowers the cost of software testing since the costs involved are a few programmer's man-hours as opposed to the computer resources and the large number of personnel involved in computer-based testing.

In summary, human testing provides the highest return on your investment of valuable software test and evaluation dollars.

#### 6.4.2 Software Only Testing

Software only testing is defined as that testing that is performed solely for the purpose of determining the integrity of the software when it is tested as an entity. In other words, one wants the assurance that the software works before it is married to the hardware. The reason for this is that software is usually integrated with newly developed hardware which has its own maturation problems. Integrating untested software with unproven hardware makes it very difficult to determine where the problems lie: hardware or software.

##### 6.4.2.1 Black Box or Functional Testing

Black box testing entails testing a particular software unit without any knowledge about the internal structure or logic of that unit (Figure 6-9). Various test cases are generated based on the specification and the requirements of the unit. The correctness of the software unit is determined only by the output data generated in response to the input data. This is done by designing the test cases with two types of input data. The first type of input data falls within the boundaries expected by the software unit and the second type of data falls outside these boundaries. The reason for

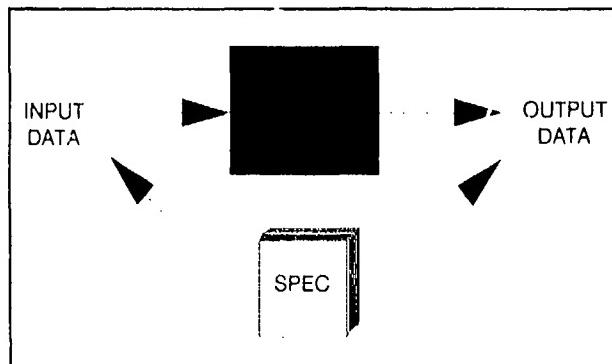


Fig. 6-9 Black Box or Functional Testing

the latter is that oftentimes it is those parameters (i.e., invalid) that do not fall within the expected limits that cause the biggest problems. It is an old dictum in software development that ensuring that the software doesn't do the unexpected is as important as ensuring that it does what it is supposed to do.

The primary objective of software testing is to demonstrate performance and reliability. Often it is useful, if not essential, to approach software testing (particularly at the lower levels) with the attitude of "Let's try to break it." This is to demonstrate the ability of the software to recover from abnormal events or to degrade in a graceful or controlled manner. Since complete and exhaustive testing of any practical size software is impossible, one must develop an acceptable level of maturity in the software. This is often measured by the number of faults that are occurring during test. As software matures, the number of faults discovered decreases and, as a minimum, the software becomes controllable (i.e., the configuration is stable).

The reason that exhaustive testing of software is a practical impossibility is that the number of valid and invalid test cases is infinite. For example, if a certain input parameter should fall within the values of 1 and 10, truly exhaustive testing would test all the values between 1 and 10. This is clearly an impossibility since there are an infinite number of valid values between these two limits. Likewise, exhaustive testing of all invalid parameters is also impossible because these are also infinite.

To summarize, software of any practical size can never be exhaustively tested and can never be guaranteed to be totally error free. Because of this, the goal of software testing is to demonstrate a certain level of performance so that there are reasonable assurances that the software performs according to the

specification. How reasonable the assurances are is a simple matter of economics, how much can one afford to test?

#### 6.4.2.2 White Box or Structural Testing

Unlike black box testing, white box testing is concerned with the internal structure and logic of the software unit. The test cases are generated using a listing of the code as opposed to the requirements specification (Figure 6-10). Generation of the input data, however, is very similar to the generation of input data for black box testing. Both valid and invalid input data are generated for the test cases and the output data is analyzed to determine the correctness of the computer code. Exhaustive white box testing is also prohibitive for the same reasons that exhaustive black box testing is impossible.

Exhaustive white box testing, however, does have another dimension other than all the possible valid and invalid input parameters. Since the tester has knowledge of the internal logic and program structure, a goal would be to test all possible logic paths that exist within the code. Although all paths can be executed, it is impossible to test all combinations. As an example, consider the logic flow of Figure 6-11 which shows a simple logic sequence that

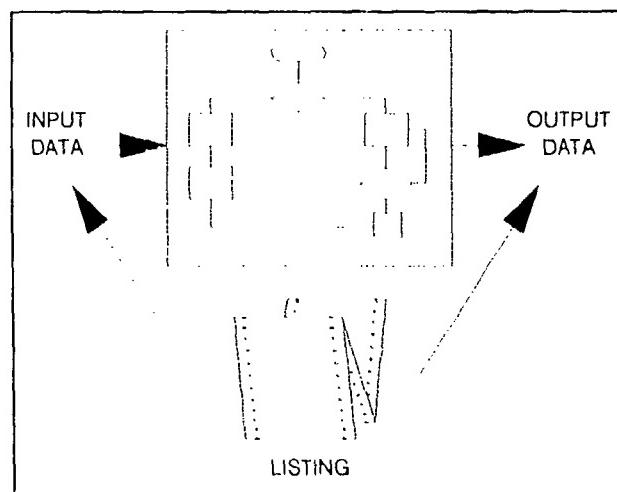


Fig. 6-10 White Box or Structural Testing

contains two loops that execute up to 12 times. This sequence contains 10 raised to the 20th power different finite paths. If one could test one logical path every nanosecond (trillionth of a second), it would take 4000 years to test all the different paths. Using a real example, it would take over 60,000 years to perform a similar type of exhaustive test on the Titan III missile guidance software.

The goal of white box testing then is also to minimize the number of errors in the delivered code and to provide reasonable assurances that the software performs according to the specification.

#### 6.4.2.3 Top-Down/Bottom-Up Testing

In actual practice the best course of action is to develop a software test strategy that incorporates both black box and white box testing philosophy. Test procedures, therefore, should make use of both the specifications and the existing listing. Regardless of what test philosophy is used, the choice remains whether to perform bottom-up testing or top-down testing.

Bottom-up testing begins with the lowest level module or unit (i.e., one that does not call any other module or unit) and tests them through the use of dummy modules or units called

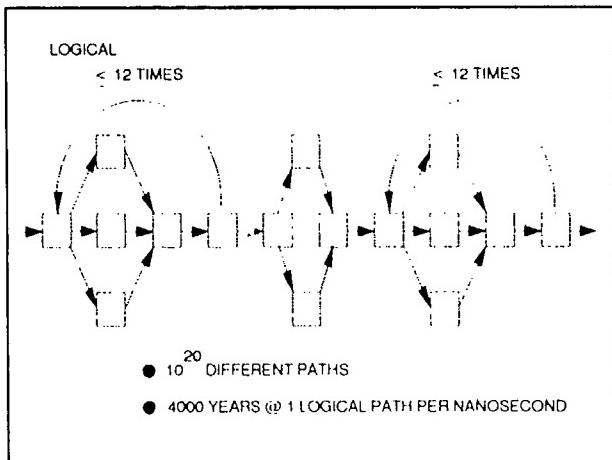


Fig. 6-11 Software Complexity

"drivers" (Figure 6-12). These drivers are coded and used for the specific module test and then replaced when the next higher level module is coded and integrated.

Top-down testing begins by testing the highest level module first and then progressively integrating and testing lower level

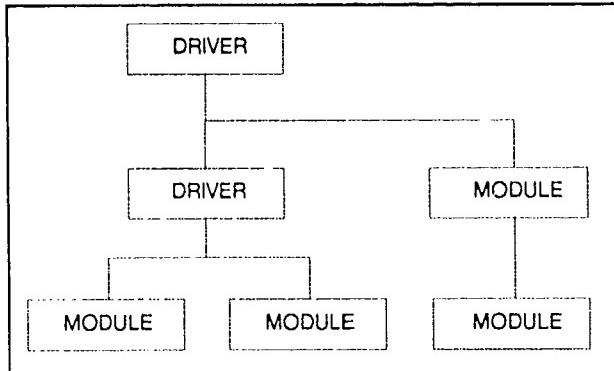


Fig. 6-12 Bottom-Up Testing

modules. A higher level module requiring lower level modules uses dummy modules that are called "stubs" (Figure 6-13). The stub may be as simple as sending a message such as "This stub is a replacement for the sorting module" or as complicated as performing dummy commands to simulate actual processing times.

There are benefits and problems associated with both approaches. In the bottom-up ap-

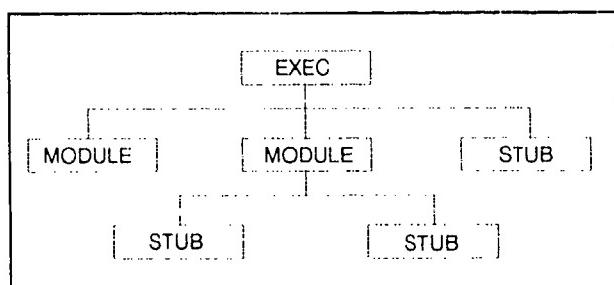


Fig. 6-13 Top-Down Testing

proach a substantial amount of time is spent in designing, coding, and testing module drivers. Since these drivers will only be used for testing, it is somewhat wasteful of a programmer's time. In addition many significant timing problems may be masked and

not discovered until late in the test cycle when both schedules and resources are tight. On the plus side, if the driver was properly designed, the next higher level module can be tested with some assurances that the lower level modules are correct.

In the top-down approach, there is a tendency to code the easier modules first. Often complex and critical modules are not coded and tested until late in the test cycle because of the difficulty in predicting module complexity. These modules may sometimes require more time and energy than was initially planned or is currently available. On the plus side, once a higher level module is coded and tested, it is repeatedly tested as more and more stubs are replaced by fully functioning modules. This repeated testing will test the internal consistency of each module and its interface with the rest of the software. It will also reveal major timing problems very early in the test cycle while there are sufficient resources to adequately solve major problems. This evolutionary approach helps to build up maturity and confidence in the software.

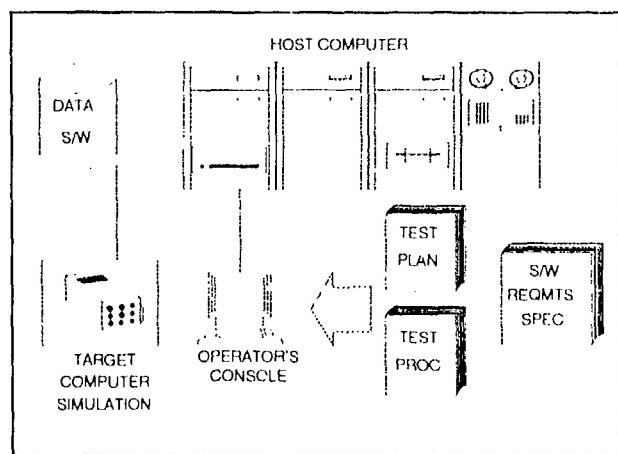
In a manner analogous to black box and white box testing, the testing philosophy should incorporate both top-down and bottom-up testing. The most complex and critical modules may be designed and coded from the bottom-up and the rest of the system can be designed and tested from the top-down. The key is to accurately determine the critical and complex modules; this is not always an easy task.

#### 6.4.2.4 Software System Testing

Integration and testing of the software as an entity can begin once all the modules in the configuration item have been coded and individually tested by the programmer. When you test the software as a system, you are not trying to duplicate the results of the various

lower level tests. The main purpose of the software system test is to ensure that the coded software, meets the overall performance objectives of the software requirements and system specifications. In other words, does the assembled software package meet the overall system requirements?

In order to conduct software system tests, it is necessary to use the target computer or to emulate/simulate it in the software workstation or mainframe. One must also simulate the rest of the hardware and the external environment (Figure 6-14). In addition large amounts of data may have to be generated and introduced into the software according to approved test plans and procedures. Since the simulations required are sometimes extensive, the software tester must have assurances that the simulations are correct. This may not be simple. Lack of adequate simulations is a major contributor to delays in software system testing. If the program is sharing computer resources with other programs or organizations, allocation of computer time and priorities must be carefully considered. Many programs have been delayed by too many organizations vying for the same resources.



**Fig. 6-14 Software System Testing**

Purchasing, installing, and checking out another computer system takes months and leasing time on an off-site computer is not

only expensive but also slows down the turn-around time.

### 6.4.3 Integration Testing

Upon completion of software system testing, systems developers embark on perhaps the most difficult, time-consuming and frustrating part of integrated testing-hot bench testing.

#### 6.4.3.1 Hot Bench Testing

If the system software works when tested as a CSCI, the next step is to marry it to actual system hardware configured in a test setup known as a hot bench (Figure 6-5). Other common names for the hot bench are systems integration lab (SIL) or systems integration facility (SIF). The objective is to test the software in a laboratory environment which closely approximates the actual system to be fielded. The hot bench will include the black boxes, cable and wire runs, data busses, and any ancillary equipment required to test the system (e.g., terminals, printers).

Once you start testing the software with real hardware, you will discover that the real world is a very "noisy" environment. Problems that are due to external causes will be propagated throughout the hot bench. For example, a large air conditioning compressor kicks in or the heavily used copying machine next door induce large transients into your equipment. Electrical transients in digital system can create unwelcome behavior. Sensitive instruments are affected by stray radio frequency (RF) signals and computers do unpredictable things when the humidity climbs above a certain threshold level. Couple this with the traditional difficulty encountered in determining whether a problem is caused by the hardware or the software and one soon realizes that an inordinate amount of time is spent

chasing ghosts, random malfunctions, and other elusive spirits.

Since this testing usually takes place towards the end of Full Scale Development and coincides with the initial phase of Production/Deployment, test personnel are vying for resources with various other groups. This means that the available black boxes are in demand by the production people, who are attempting to build the systems, the Automatic Test Equipment (ATE) folks, who are building the automated software to test these black boxes, and the test personnel conducting quality, environmental and stress tests.

Obtaining these black boxes may become very difficult, and a lack of adequate backups for failed components is a major contributor to test delays. Because of the usually high cost of these items, early planning for these assets will not solve all the availability problems. One may not be able to afford to buy more of the hardware required. A compromise is to share the black boxes. Test schedules are often driven, not by the complexity of the tests, but by the availability of resources. Asset management is an important aspect of any hot bench testing.

Other factors which must be considered are the facilities and the scheduling of these facilities. To perform hot bench testing the facility must have adequate power and air conditioning to handle the anticipated power and heat loads. TEMPEST requirements, as well as other security requirements, must be adhered to if the testing will generate or use classified data. All of this requires careful planning since design and development schedules may change and the facilities may not be available when they are needed. In addition, if the hot bench testing slips too much, conflicts may arise with other programs which may have planned to use the same

facility space. It is a good idea to plan for these unexpected contingencies.

Many of these problems can be minimized if the test requirements and resources are adequately addressed in the TEMP and the Software Test Plan.

#### 6.4.3.2 DT&E/OT&E Testing

The next phase of testing is by far the most expensive of all. It involves performing field tests in an environment closely approximating the environment of the anticipated threat. If flight testing is involved, one must include the test aircraft, chase aircraft, test ranges, logistics support for all the aircraft and test equipment, large data reduction systems and software and the hundreds of personnel required to conduct and coordinate the various tests (Figure 6-6). Clearly hundreds of thousands to millions of dollars are tied up in field testing major systems.

Logistic support for DT&E must also be planned. Failure rates for electronic equipment must be anticipated and provisions made for backups and repair of failed components. Repairs may be done organically for OT&E but for DT&E the repairs are usually performed by the contractor.

Scheduling of national assets such as the China Lake Naval Weapons Center or the Edwards Flight Test Center will have to be done years in advance when the crystal ball is pretty cloudy. Schedule uncertainties, unpredictable weather and unforeseen technical problems will force the test manager to constantly generate contingency test plans to accommodate program requirements with those of other legitimate DOD users requiring the use of the same national assets.

Data reduction can be a significant bottleneck. During any major field testing activities, prodigious amounts of data can be generated. Adequate computer resources and sufficiently tested support software packages are required. It is not uncommon to wait one or two weeks for data to be reduced and presented in a format suitable for engineering analysis. If in addition, you are required to have organizations other than your own (i.e., another service facility) record data for your test, additional bureaucratic delays can further add time to your test program.

The most important thing, however, is to realize that field testing should confirm hot bench results. If you're not ready, don't fly. If it doesn't completely work in the lab, don't waste program resources using the field as a laboratory.

### 6.5 TEST TOOLS

It is an ironic fact that the very industry that has automated major segments of other industries, has itself failed to automate. Thanks to computers and software, robots and automation are major players in such diverse industries as automobile manufacturing, publishing, and textiles. When it comes to software development, however, it is all virtually manual labor. It still requires a person to translate a set of requirements into a set of computer instructions. Computers that generate code directly from human languages are still far in the future.

This doesn't mean that there are no software development tools. Numerous tools exist and, although they all require extensive human participation, they are, nevertheless, very useful. Test tools can be classified into the following categories:

**Requirements' Analysis Tools** - These tools provide the capability to incrementally state system requirements and to systematically check for consistency and completeness.

**Text Editors** - Tools used to insert, delete, or manipulate portions of any text such as documentation, test data or code.

**Test Generators** - Allow test drivers to be developed in a systematic and standardized fashion. Sometimes can be automatically generated during the coding process.

**Static Analysis Tools** - Perform a static analysis of a particular program to produce a listing of questionable coding practices, departures from programming and coding standards, isolated code, symbol tables, etc.

**Debugging Tools** - On-line tools that enable programmers to interact with their program during program execution in order to assist them in locating errors.

**Environmental Simulators** - Allow for the simulation of a particular system environment when testing in the real environment is either impractical or too expensive.

**System Simulators** - Simulations of other systems which interact with the system under development or simulations of major subsystems not yet available.

**Data Reduction/Analysis Tools** - Software and computer packages that allow large volumes of data to be analyzed and reduced to a format easily digestible by engineers and managers.

## 6.6 DEBUGGING

Debugging is the activity of finding and correcting a known error. It is performed after a

test run has uncovered errors. Methods for debugging include: brute force, induction, deduction, backtracking, and testing [4].

The brute force method, although requiring little thought, is the most inefficient of all debugging methods. This is because it usually takes the form of (1) memory dumps, (2) scattering print statements in the code or (3) using automated debugging tools which require labor intensive analysis to trace the error.

Debugging by induction requires careful thought and follows the classical inductive method of examining the data, looking for relationships, devising a hypothesis and proving the hypothesis by locating the error.

Debugging by deductive reasoning proceeds from general theories or premises about the cause of an error, eliminates and refines the premises, arrives at a conclusion and finds the error.

Backtracking involves starting at the point where the incorrect result was produced and reverse engineering the program to discover the source of the error.

Debugging by testing involves the generation of small samples of test data in an attempt to isolate the problem.

Of all programming activities, debugging is probably the most disliked. This is because debugging is a mentally taxing effort and quite often it is very damaging to sensitive egos that see programming errors as personal failures or indictments of their programming competence. It can be very difficult because many faults can be caused by errors in a program statement anywhere in the entire program. Developments in the state-of-practice of software engineering are minimizing these types of errors.

There are certain debugging principles that have arisen out of the collective experience of programming [4]. These are:

- (a) Be careful when using debugging tools. They often introduce more problems than they solve and often require a non-trivial investment of time in order to become proficient with the tool;
- (b) Experience has shown that where there is one bug, there are usually more because it has been shown that errors tend to cluster;
- (c) The probability of a fix being correct is never 100%. Correction of an error often introduces additional errors requiring further debugging;
- (d) It is always best to change the source code and not the object code. Correcting the object code throws the source code and the object code out of sync and may produce disastrous results elsewhere in the program or later on in the execution;

## 6.7 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE

The following suggestions provide some general guidance during the planning and execution of software test and evaluation.

- (a) If an IV&V organization is going to be used, bring them on board early, preferably during the Concept Exploration phase. Just a handful of people (2-3) performing an IV&V role can be invaluable.
- (b) When evaluating contractors' proposals and Software Development Plans make sure that some organization other than the one developing the software performs the testing. The developing organization may develop test plans, but it should not test its own

software. This independence can be internal or external to the contractor;

- (c) As part of the evaluation process, insure that a good quality assurance organization is in place. Since software development is so labor intensive, it is important that an organization exists to impose programming standards, procedures and regimentation on the development process and to evaluate both the process and the product;
- (d) Perhaps one of the most important things to remember is that failure to impose strict discipline into the software development process is the quickest way to ensure disaster. This discipline must exist in the program office as well. The program manager must be absolutely resolute in insisting that a software developer complete an activity before proceeding to the next one. If the developer is not ready for a PDR or CDR, then reschedule it. If they haven't finished software testing, then don't proceed into hot bench integration.
- (e) The program office should have the eventual user, the supporting activity, and the IV&V contractor (if there is one) participate in the thorough review of the Software Test Plan. They should critically examine whether:
  - all test resources have been identified;
  - all the test software tools are available, are matured and currently in use;
  - the test schedule is adequate. Remember that software development is almost always on the critical path;
  - the developer really understands software testing principles;

- testing is complete and has demonstrated operational performance and reliability.

(f) Seek help at the very beginning of the program don't wait until software development is in trouble because then it is too late. It doesn't hurt to have an outside organization examine the status of the software at critical intervals during the development cycle;

(g) Insist that program office personnel attend software training courses on a periodic basis, especially young software project officers. Your program will derive benefits by allowing your personnel to keep up with software practice and technology.

(h) Make absolutely sure that the program office engineering and software personnel perform a thorough review of:

- preliminary software design;

- test plans and procedures;

- traceability of requirements from the system specification all the way down to the test procedures;

- the developer's configuration management organization and procedures. On a major software development, keeping track of the various versions of software is a non-trivial task. Many major test programs have been severely impacted because the wrong version of software has been tested.

(i) Never, never, never test software that contains patches! A patch is defined as a piece of machine language code that is overwritten over an existing piece of object code. Testing software with patches is nothing more than a game of Russian Roulette. You may get by

once, but eventually your test program is going to blow up in your face! Insist that software errors be corrected at the source code level. Treat error correction as redevelopment by tracing all the way back from the system requirements through design and by ensuring that the documentation is updated.

The only time a software patch is justified in a software test program is when it is necessary to disable a function for safety reasons or when it is impossible to conduct a particular test without the use of a patch. At any, rate once these tests are over get rid of the patch!

Don't even think about fielding into an operational environment any software package containing patches!

## 6.8 REFERENCES

1. AFR 800-14, *Lifecycle Management of Computer Resources in Systems*, 29 September 1986.
2. Buhr, R.J.A., *System Design With Ada*, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
3. McCabe, Thomas J. and Gordon Schulmeyer, "The Pareto Principle Applied to Software Quality Assurance," *Handbook of Software Quality Assurance*, Ed. G. Gordon Schulmeyer and James I. McManus, New York, NY, Van Nostrand Reinhold Company Inc., 1987.
4. Myers, Glenford J., *The Art of Software Testing*, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1979.
5. AFSCP 800-14, *Software Quality Indicators*, January 1987.

# CHAPTER 7

---

## POST DEPLOYMENT SOFTWARE SUPPORT

### 7.1 BACKGROUND

More than two thirds of the DOD's expenditure for software is for Post Deployment Software Support (PDSS) [1]. The Electronics Industry Association (EIA) has predicted that Mission Critical Computer Software could cost the Department of Defense about \$36.2 billion by the year 1992. Software costs are rising and will continue to rise at a proportionately greater rate than other system costs. The cost of software will continue to rise dramatically unless corrective measures are taken to include: a greater awareness by program managers about the problems faced by software engineers; an understanding of the problems that arise in the software development process and how they can be corrected; and a change in the their attitudes about software support.

### 7.2 PROBLEM AREAS

As discussed in Chapter 2, the growth in the use of computer technology, especially in the last twenty five years, has drastically increased

the requirements for software. In the 1960s the Air Force's F-111 aircraft required less than 100 thousand software instructions. In the 1970s the Navy's P-3C aircraft required about 500 thousand software instructions. In the 1980s the B-1B required over one million software instructions just for the operational flight programs. Projections for the U.S. Air Forces's Advanced Tactical Fighter (ATF) call for about four million software instructions and the Space Station calls for about 80 million software instructions. Software requirements for the next generation of systems seem to be unlimited. These trends in fielded software are depicted in Figure 7-1 [1].

This increase in the amount of fielded software has obviously increased the requirement for software support services. However, this increase in software support and the lack of qualified personnel to provide these services, make software support more difficult to manage. Dr. Edith Martin in a speech presented in 1984 to the Joint Logistics Com-

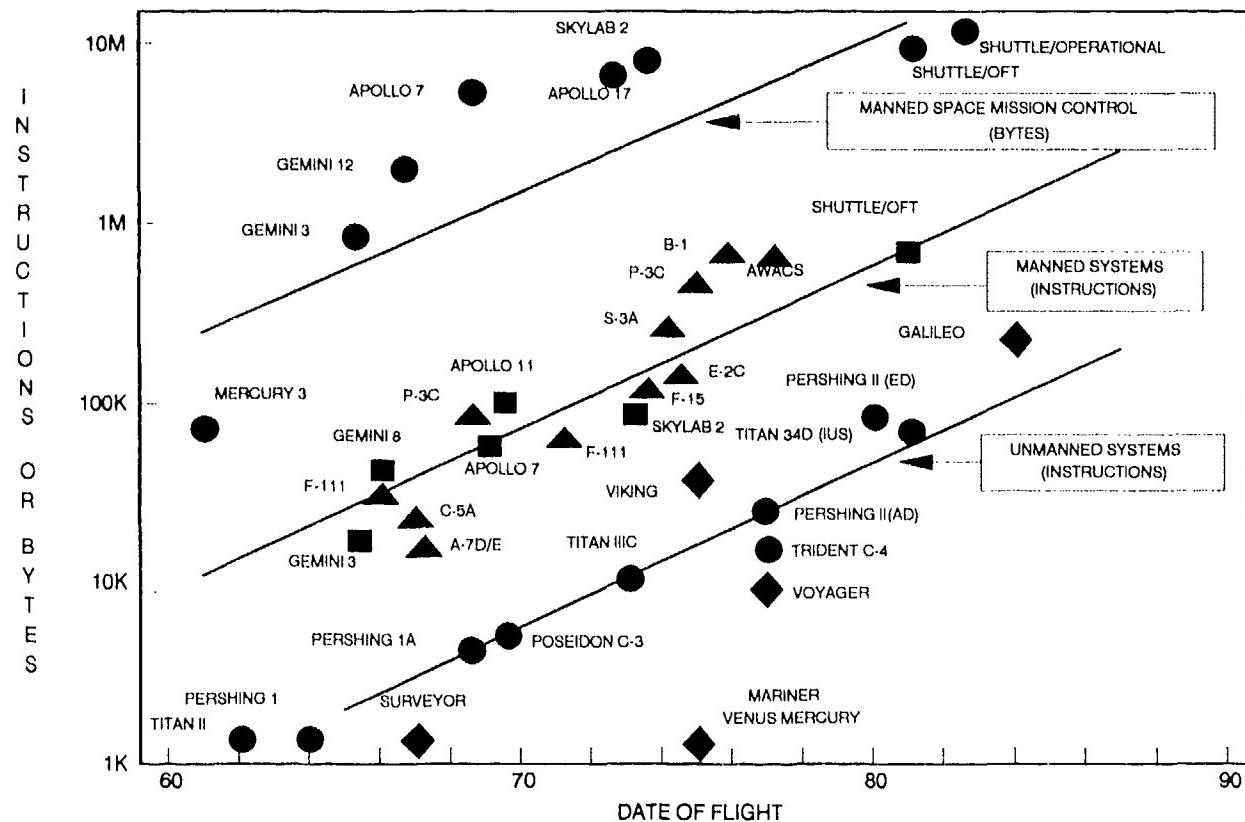


Fig. 7-1 Trends in Software

manders Workshop entitled "The Relationship Between PDSS and Advanced Technology," estimated that the requirement for software support personnel was increasing at a rate of 12 percent per year. However, the availability of qualified personnel was only increasing at a rate of 4 percent. If one assumes an annual productivity rate gain of four percent, there will exist a four percent shortfall in the amount of available personnel. Based on these estimates, and assuming nothing else changes, by 1990 the number of personnel required will exceed the number of personnel available by one million. An effective way must be found to control both cost and schedule and to properly train, develop, and retain a cadre of software professionals for both the development of new software and the support of existing software. Possible solutions to these problems will be discussed later in this chapter.

The EIA study discussed in Chapter 2 predicted that by 1992 software will cost the DOD about 29.1 billion dollars, and computer hardware will cost about 6.1 billion dollars. Figure 7-2 indicates that software support services will account for about seventy percent of this anticipated software cost and software development will account for the remaining thirty percent. It is apparent that if something is not done quickly, the government will not be able to afford the software required by modern weapon systems.

The problem of controlling cost is compounded by the fact that software support funding is fragmented. In 1984, the Industry/Government Workforce Mix Panel of the Joint Logistics Commanders (JLC) Workshop on PDSS [2] addressed the Air Force funding of system acquisition and software support. Even after a system is

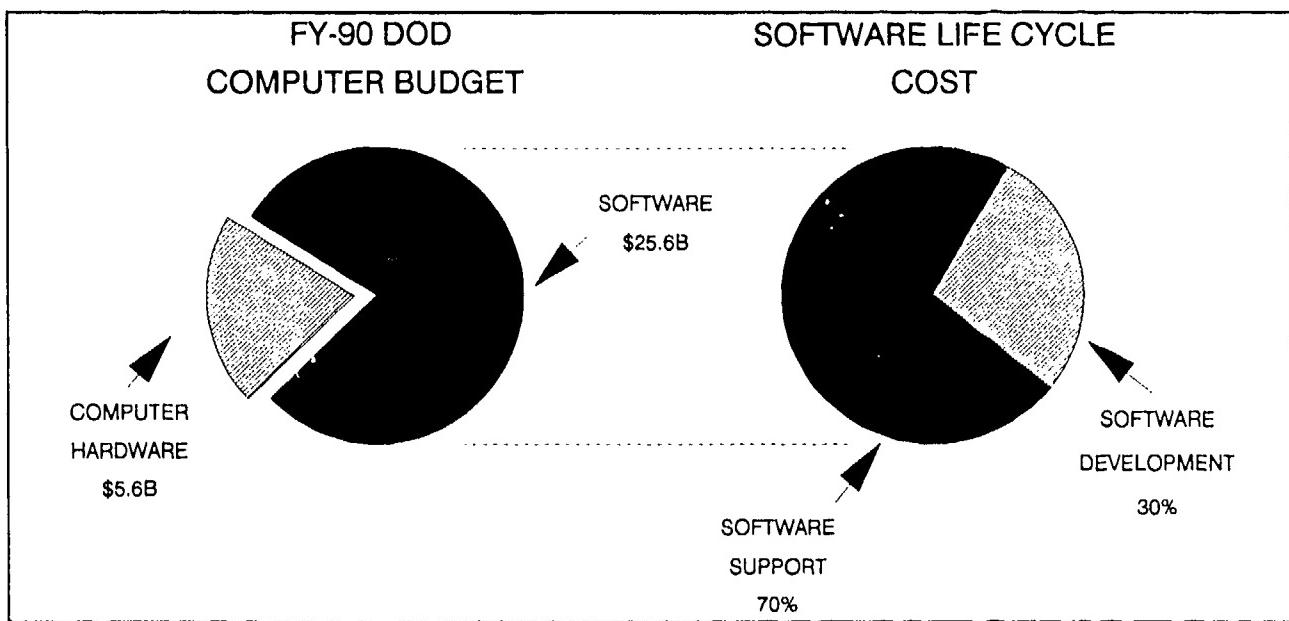


Fig. 7-2 Software Costs

deployed, hardware and software are budgeted, funded, and prioritized by separate processes and channels. Multiple procedures for budgeting and funding often are required for the same item, as opposed to separate budget and funding codes for separate but related items. All of this creates confusion for the program manager or anyone else trying to get a handle on life cycle costs. Actual cost tracking can be difficult to deal with and requires careful coordination of one-year R&D software money with three-year hardware procurement money for system modifications. Further difficulties can develop when one considers that PDSS may be divided between depot and field-level activities.

The Air Force has problems in clearly defining the responsibilities of the depot and those of the field activities. This not only makes it difficult to split up the workload, but adds to the funding problem. The other services have similar problems that make the funding process difficult. If the government is to get a handle on cost, the method used to fund the development process and PDSS must be streamlined. There should be a common budgeting procedure used by all of the ser-

vices and by all levels within the government. These procedures should identify appropriations, budget programs, program elements, and specific funding codes for weapon systems using a single, simplified process for setting priorities. If this is accomplished, the government and program managers may at least get a better picture of the funding issues while affording them a way to deal with it in an intelligent manner. The way to deal with the current situation is to become aware of the difficulties and to plan in advance the transition of software support. This is done by clearly defining the roles and responsibilities of the various support organizations, including their funding requirements, in the Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (See Section 7-7).

### 7.3 MANAGEMENT PERCEPTIONS

One of the realities of life is that people have perceptions about software which may not be true. Most people understand that hardware is tangible, material intensive and produced by machine, while software is intangible, labor intensive, and mostly produced by hand. They further accept that hardware deteriorates

over time, is hard to change, requires preventive maintenance, and has relatively high production costs. Software is believed to have exactly the opposite characteristics. Software does improve over time with updates, requires no preventive maintenance, and has only trivial production costs, but is never easy to change correctly. These perceptions tend to cause management problems and must be resolved to decrease PDSS costs.

There is a mistaken belief that PDSS is a trivial task and less important than software design. Unfortunately, this results in less qualified personnel assigned to do software support rather than the more skilled technicians and managers. The feeling is that software support personnel should possess the same skill levels as the local auto mechanic while software design personnel should have the skills of automotive engineers.

Another misconception that plagues some program managers is a lack of understanding as to what constitutes the supportable

software products. The software iceberg (Figure 7-3) is a graphic description of some of the various tools, documentation, etc., that form the total software package. For the PDSS facility to properly support the product, it must have the same basic tools and information that was available to the developer. One should also realize that many of these items can have their own icebergs. There is a tendency to cut costs in software programs by cutting out those things that are required later on in the program's life cycle. Some program managers do not fully understand the value of procuring items such as simulators, editors, compilers, test tools, other software tools, and documentation. Some may even feel that such items are gold plating. The fact is that without these items software cannot be properly supported.

#### 7.4 MANAGEMENT CONCERNS

Program Managers must understand the needs of the user. They are often faced with the need to change the software because of a new requirement (e.g., a changing threat) or

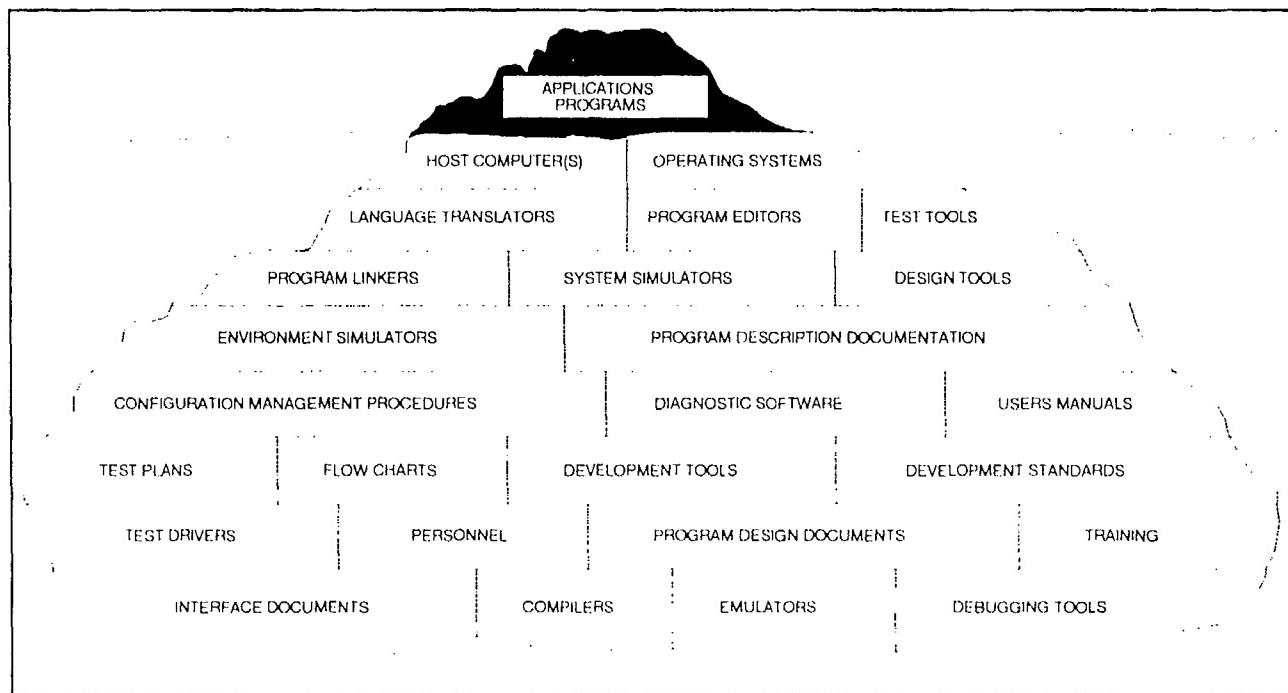


Fig. 7-3 The Software Iceberg

to correct a problem. All program managers should ensure that the software developed is supportable, and that the capability to support the software by the government or industry exists. This determination of support must include the people who will actually do the work as well as the facilities and tools necessary to accomplish this effort. Cost and schedule are obvious drivers in the decision process. However, software considerations must be put in perspective with the total weapon system. Any change to the software may have an impact on the hardware. In addition, any changes made to the software may impact other software and/or future system requirements, just as hardware changes have impact on the system.

## 7.5 WHAT IS PDSS?

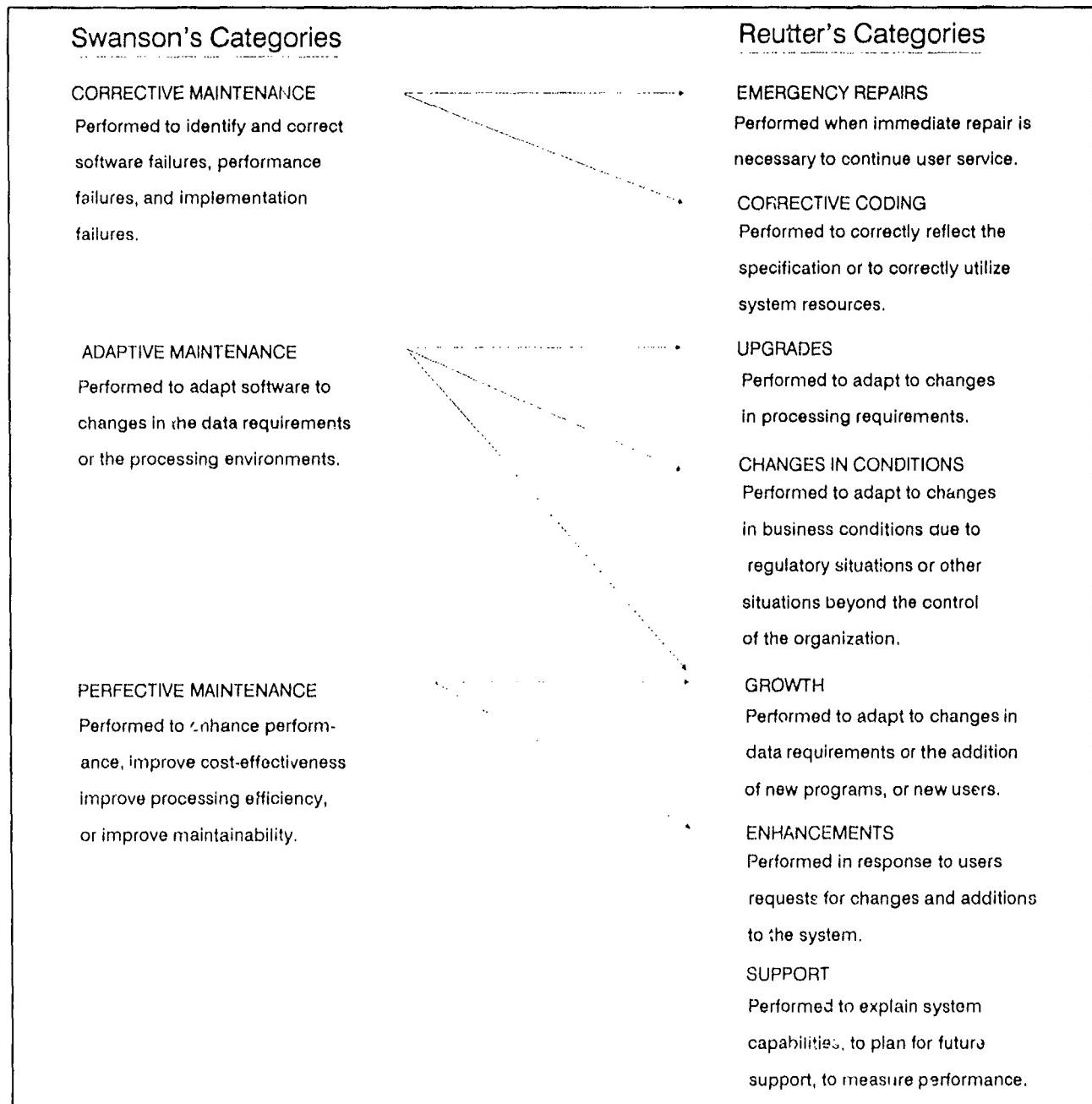
Software does not fail in the classical sense. Hardware degrades over time as components wear out. A software problem is due to an error that has existed since its creation. When a problem caused by a component failure is found in hardware, the solution entails bringing the item back to the original configuration. In software when a problem is found and corrected, a new configuration is created. Software does not wear out like hardware; so "software maintenance" is a misnomer. The appropriate name for this effort is "software support". The Joint Logistics Commanders in 1984 decided that, in order to answer the many questions about software support, a definition of Post Deployment Software Support was needed. Further, such a definition should provide a uniform basis for understanding and dealing with software support issues. The JLCs have defined PDSS as follows:

*"Post Deployment Software Support is the sum of all activities required to ensure that, during the production/deployment phase of a mission*

*critical computer system's life, the implemented and fielded software/system continues to support its original operational mission and subsequent mission modifications and production improvement efforts."*

This means that software is modified to either correct a problem or to add a capability. There are other ways to look at the various software support activities other than breaking down the efforts into modification and the addition of capabilities. Figure 7-4 [3] looks at two different approaches. Swanson [4] breaks down software support into three categories. The first category talks about corrective efforts, examples of which might be the correction of a problem in reading a file in a record properly, or a failure to test all possible conditions. The second category deals with adaptive efforts which include such things as improving processing speed or adjustments to add new input or output devices. The last category includes software that is modified to make enhancements in response to new requirements, or to give the operator more flexibility. Reutter [5] refined these efforts by breaking them into the seven categories shown in Figure 7-4. Reutter's seven categories separate support from each of Swanson's three categories. The intention of this breakout is to emphasize the communication between the user and the support activity. It also shows the importance of planning for support.

There is some disagreement among software people as to whether the above efforts should be called software support or software maintenance. The term software maintenance gives the impression that the effort involves preventing components from wearing out or breaking as in the case of hardware. This is not the case for software and one of the reasons why the JLCs use the term software support. Also the term maintenance does not

**Fig. 7-4 Types of Software Support Efforts**

convey a feeling that design work is being carried out. In any case, the amount of work required to correct software deficiencies accounts for only about twenty percent of the total software support effort [6]. Eighty percent of the PDSS efforts are spent in adding new capability to the software, or refining requirements not clearly defined in the original requirements.

## 7.6 SOFTWARE LIFE CYCLE CONSIDERATIONS

One of the major reasons for the high cost of software support is that it costs much more to correct problems after the initial design has been completed than it does to correct problems early in the development phase. Modifications require the same development

activities as the original process because software support is redevelopment. It is extremely difficult to understand someone else's design, to figure out what they were trying to accomplish, to correct any latent problems, or to add new capabilities. This can become impossible if the documentation is poor.

Figure 7-5 indicates that while most errors are introduced during the early phases of the software development cycle, these errors are not usually found until the software is being validated or supported. Barry W. Boehm [1] indicates that the cost of correcting software errors or adding lines of code to existing software increases dramatically as the life cycle progresses. There can be as much as a hundred to one, or greater, increase in costs. In a study performed in 1978 [7], the DOD found that the average cost of generating a

late in the development cycle, tends to significantly increase software life cycle costs.

## 7.7 IMPROVING THE PDSS PROCESS

There are a number of actions that can be taken to improve the PDSS process and to reduce software life cycle costs. One of the most important is the creation of a document that spells out all of the activities that must be accomplished during the life of the software program. Within the DOD this document is called the Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP). The CRLCMP is developed early in the acquisition cycle to ensure that all issues and resources relevant to the acquisition, testing, and support are properly accounted for. Both the Navy, with OPNAVINST 5200.28 [8] and the Air Force with AFR 800-14 [9] require that the CRLCMP be initiated by the developing

SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT	DEV \$	ERRORS INTRODUCED	ERRORS FOUND	RELATIVE COST OF ERRORS
REQUIREMENTS ANALYSIS	5%	55%	18%	1.0
DESIGN	25%	30%	10%	1 - 1.5
CODE & UNIT TEST	10%			
INTEGRATION & TEST	50%	10%	50%	1.5 - 5.0
VALIDATION & DOCUMENTATION	10%			
OPERATIONS & MAINTENANCE		5%	22%	10 - 100

Fig. 7-5 Software Life Cycle Considerations

line of code is about seventy-five dollars while the average cost of modifying a line of code late in the development cycle or after software delivery is four-thousand dollars. This high cost of modifying software, coupled with the fact that most errors are not uncovered until

activity during Concept Exploration and updated as the program progresses. The CRLCMP is approved prior to Full Scale Development. However, it should be clearly understood that the CRLCMP is a living document and should be updated whenever

the software is modified. A rule of thumb is to update the CRLCMP at least annually.

The CRLCMP describes the total software support strategy. It defines the criteria for measuring progress and identifies the resources needed to develop, test, acquire, and support computer resources (e.g., facilities, personnel, hardware, software, training, funding, tools). The CRLCMP identifies the regulations and operating instructions that will be used to manage the system software. It also identifies all the organizations involved in the acquisition and support and their roles, responsibilities and relationships. The Integrated Logistics Support Plan (ILSP) is the parent document to the CRLCMP and defines the overall supportability strategy. Therefore, the CRLCMP should be closely coordinated with the ILSP.

Managing PDSS is managing change. It is important to put a rigorous change control process in place during development that can effectively transition. The program manager and/or support manager must understand why software changes are needed and what resources are needed to make appropriate economic and technical tradeoffs. An effective change control system allows the program manager to make these decisions.

PDSS managers must understand their role in the PDSS process and the motivation for a software change. Is a change required to add a capability that the user needs, or to correct a deficiency? If a change is required, are the personnel necessary to implement the change available and capable of performing the task? Has the program office provided the software support personnel the necessary tools and resources necessary to make changes successfully? When a change is to be made, will there be any disruption to current services? How long will it take to make these changes? What

will be the impact on software integrity and what are the ramifications for future changes?

In 1984 the JLC report on the "Cost of Ownership" [2] concluded that program managers needed to understand how each PDSS activity was organized and how it functions within their own services. To this end, they provided the following descriptions of PDSS centers:

**Army** - The Army PDSS center is a center within a DARCOM subordinate command established to support the software subsystems of all battlefield automated systems for which that command has logistics support responsibility. Each center normally supports numerous systems.

**Navy** - The Navy PDSS centers' functions and staffing are provided for by the In-Service Engineering Activity assigned the life cycle system support responsibility. Note that a system may be an aircraft avionics package, a shipboard navigational system, or a shore-based Command, Control, Communications and Intelligence system.

**Air Force** - The Air Force provides for a PDSS center as part of Integrated Support Facility (ISF) which is used to provide all hardware and software engineering support. This ISF is located in the engineering division or branch which supports the system program director (SPD) in an Air Logistics Center.

**Marine Corps** - The Marine Corps has established a single PDSS center completely separate from hardware maintenance facilities. This center provides support for designated Marine Corps Software programs.

## **1. Organization Chain:**

Within the services, PDSS centers are located either in a logistics chain, a Research and

Development (R&D) chain or a combination of the two. The Navy has a combination chain with a single boss. The Air Force PDSS center is in the logistics chain, but receives direction from a logistics boss via the R&D chain. The Army established 11 PDSS centers located at the development commands, but funded by the readiness organizations within combined commands. Overall PDSS management is performed by DARCOM.

Coordination between R&D and logistics is always difficult. Having a single boss reduces the difficulty to some degree.

## **2. Development of Policy and Compliances:**

Higher level headquarters establishes policy, publishes implementing instruction and ensures compliance by the PDSS centers within their individual commands.

## **3. How Funded:**

The Air Force is Operations and Maintenance (O&M) funded unless a major rebuild is required; then the system goes back to the developer and R&D funds are used. The Navy primarily uses O&M funds, but may also send major modifications back into a R&D cycle. The Marine Corps uses R&D funds. The Army uses a plethora of funding including numerous types of O&M, procurement and R&D dollars.

A standard approach to funding and a better definition of maintenance would help reduce some of these overly burdensome requisition and accounting functions.

## **4. Acquire Software Environment:**

In all the services, the PDSS centers, in conjunction with the developer, identify support requirements. In the Navy and Air Force the

acquisition manager is responsible for procuring the initial suites of equipments, and the PDSS center is responsible for updating/replacing that equipment. In the Army, no defined responsibility exists to ensure that the developer acquires the support environment, including mockups and simulators.

## **5. How Location Is Determined:**

The Air Force locates the PDSS centers within the system program directorate (Air Logistics Center) along with sustaining engineering. The Navy collocates the PDSS centers with the activity responsible for in-service engineering support. The Marine Corps only has one PDSS center whose command has the logistics responsibility for the system or has computer resources. If the system is a command and control system, the PDSS center is collocated with the battlefield functional area school.

## **6. How System is Learned:**

The Army and Air Force PDSS centers become involved at the beginning of the development cycle. They either participate in the developmental process or become the IV&V organization. The Navy may follow the same procedure, depending on when the PDSS center is designated. The Marine Corps PDSS center has previously been involved as part of the development responsibility and has replaced it with more of an IV&V type role.

The involvement of the PDSS centers throughout the development cycle is critical to the successful performance of PDSS work.

## **7. Use Of the PDSS Center For IV&V:**

There is currently no stated requirement to perform IV&V in any of the services, and

there is a wide variance of how the services accomplish IV&V. In those programs where there is a requirement for IV&V, the PDSS center is a logical choice and should be used to the maximum extent practical.

#### **8. Software Configuration Control:**

All service PDSS centers perform configuration control, but are not always formally tasked with performing configuration management.

#### **9. Type of Changes:**

There are three types of changes: those brought about by latent defects; those brought about by user enhancement requests; and those necessitated by major product improvements. All the service PDSS centers perform the first two types of changes. Major product improvements are usually accomplished by a contractor, with the PDSS center providing background information and support.

#### **10. Evaluation Of Complaint:**

The Army maintenance directorate sends logistic support representatives to the user activity to investigate complaints. Once the problem is identified and verified, the maintenance directorate notifies the PDSS centers who then attempt to duplicate the problem. The other service PDSS centers receive the trouble report directly from the user and attempt to duplicate the problem. Responses back to the complaining user vary from periodic status reports about the complaint to not providing any follow-up information.

#### **11. Develop Software Engineering Change Solution:**

Once the problem has been identified, the PDSS centers determine the cause. Solu-

tions are developed and testing is conducted to ensure that the original problem has been solved and that additional problems have not been created.

#### **12. Integration Testing:**

In all the services, integration testing is performed when the PDSS center has completed system testing. With the exception of the Navy, testing is always performed on the actual equipment being integrated. In the Navy, the size of the integration problem often prevents the PDSS center from conducting the integration testing in a totally realistic environment. The software which has been modified is run on actual system hardware, but those systems with which it communicates (i.e., integrated) may be simulated. The limitations on integration testing of Navy shipboard combat systems due to the availability of actual systems are recognized and organic integration facilities have been or are being established. These facilities are outside the PDSS centers' responsibility and control, but are available to the PDSS center for use.

#### **13. Interoperability Testing:**

All the service PDSS centers conduct interoperability testing to ensure that changes made to correct problems will in no way interfere with the capabilities of the system to communicate with other systems.

#### **14. Documentation Update:**

All the service PDSS centers update documentation for every change made. Two major problems being experienced are the inadequacy of many existing standards and initial delivery of poor documentation. Standards must be published that meet the needs of all services and contracts must be

written to require documentation in accordance with these standards. DOD-STD-2167A is a positive step in the right direction. It describes a common approach to software development.

### **15. Distribution Of Software Corrections To Users:**

For systems where there is limited distribution, changes are hand-delivered and accompanied by sufficient instruction to allow the user to execute a smooth transition. In those systems where a large number of changes must be installed, the users are supplied with a written instruction package through a distribution process.

### **7.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE.**

By changing the traditional prejudices toward software support, by following sound engineering practices, and through the use of good management tools and plans, program managers can begin to deal with the software life cycle support problems. The following represents a set of guidelines which can be followed by the program manager and can lead to more cost effective software support:

(a) The program manager must ensure that sound software engineering design techniques are used during the development process where the majority of all errors are introduced and that the software is designed for supportability;

(b) The CRLCMP must be developed early in the life of the program development cycle (Concept Exploration phase), periodically updated and adhered to;

(c) Personnel and productivity are important issues. It is incumbent upon program managers to acquire and retain a qualified and

stable workforce. This may require the program manager to develop a continuous training program for software personnel. In order to get more out of the personnel, program managers must provide the supporting activity modern tools and facilities;

(d) Documentation and support software tend to be cut out of programs early in the development process in order to save money. This causes severe problems later on in the program. It is important that all the tools necessary to provide software support are delivered to the support facility;

(e) The software baseline must be controlled throughout its life cycle by using good configuration management techniques;

(f) The program manager should involve the PDSS organization early in the development. The personnel at these facilities have a wealth of knowledge about what is required to support a program and about the associated problems. This provides the program manager with a real time lessons learned;

(g) It is imperative that the program manager appropriately plan, budgets, and fund the PDSS effort.

### **7.8 REFERENCES**

1. Boehm, Barry W., *Software Engineering Economics*, Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1981.
2. "Final Report of the Joint Logistics Commanders Workshop on Post Deployment Software Support for Mission Critical Computer Resources," Volume II - *Workshop Proceedings*, June 1984.
3. Martin, James and Carma McClure, *Software Maintenance - The Problem and its*

- Solutions, Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1983.
4. Swanson, E., "The Dimension of Maintenance," *2nd International Conference on Software Engineering, Proceedings*, San Francisco, October 13-15, 1976, pp. 492-497
5. Reutter, John, "Maintenance Is a Management Problem and a Programmer's Opportunity," *AFIPS Conference Proceedings on 1981 National Computer Conference* (Chicago), Vol. 50, May 4-7, 1981, pp.343-347.
6. Lientz, B., and E. Swanson, *Software Maintenance Management*, Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Inc., 1980, pp. 151-157.
7. De Rosel, B., and T. Nyman, "The Software Life Cycle - A Management and Technological Challenge in the Department of Defense," *IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering*, Vol. SE-4, No. 4, July 1978, pp. 309-318.
8. OPNAVINSTR 5200.28, *Life Cycle Management of Mission Critical Computer Resources*, 25 September 1986.
9. AF Regulation 800-14, *Life Cycle Management of Computer Resources in System*, 29 September 1986.

# CHAPTER 8

---

## PLANNING FOR COMPUTER SOFTWARE

### 8.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter will discuss the software planning activities that must be conducted during the various phases of software acquisition. The success of any project is greatly determined by how much care and time are put into the planning process. Software development and acquisition are no different!

Planning for computer software begins during the Concept Exploration (CE) Phase and intensifies during the Demonstration and Validation (D/V) Phase. By the time the program enters the Full Scale Development (FSD) Phase, most of the necessary software planning documents should have been generated.

### 8.2 PLANS AND DOCUMENTATION

The major plans and documents generated by the program office are the Program Management Plan (PMP), the Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP), the Integrated Logis-

tics Support Plan (ILSP), the Computer Resources Lifecycle Management Plan (CRLCMP), and the System/Segment Specification (SSS).

#### 8.2.1 Program Management Plan (PMP)

The purpose of the PMP is to guide all program office personnel toward a common goal. The PMP provides essential information on the overall program strategy and goals. It can be viewed as the game plan for the program office and includes a schedule of the major events leading to the initial operating capability (IOC).

The PMP should be updated and kept current, particularly with respect to the schedules. It should be mandatory reading for every newcomer into the organization. This is especially true in software development since software is usually on the critical path. A detailed outline of the PMP is given in Appendix C.

### **8.2.2 Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP)**

The TEMP is the basic planning document for all test and evaluation (T&E) related to a particular system acquisition. It is used by the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD) and all DOD components in planning, reviewing, and approving T&E. The TEMP provides the basis for all other detailed T&E planning documents.

The TEMP must address the effects of human performance on the weapon system's operational effectiveness and the ability of the system to meet performance standards, including reliability and maintainability.

The TEMP must address the system's critical technical performance thresholds and their relationship to the system's required operational characteristics. It must clearly outline the planned T&E process through which the test objectives will be met. It must also describe the physical hardware tests and any analysis required to provide data not gained from actual testing.

The TEMP must clearly describe the required T&E activities along with all the necessary resources for fully testing the operational suitability of the weapon system.

The TEMP is intended to be a living document that addresses the changing critical issues affecting any acquisition program. Major changes in program requirements, schedule, or funding usually result in a change to the test program. To ensure that T&E requirements are current, the TEMP shall be updated on an annual basis until all significant testing is complete. The update shall reflect changes to the T&E program due to: test results, changes in the scope or schedule of the T&E program, changes in the required

characteristics, changes in the reassessment of test resource provisions and limitations, or any changes deemed necessary by the OSD. A detailed outline of the TEMP is found in Appendix D.

### **8.2.3 Integrated Logistics Support Plan (ILSP)**

The ILSP describes and documents the integrated logistics support program. It is the principal logistics document for an acquisition program and serves as a source document for summary and consolidated information required in other program management documents. It is summarized in the System Concept Paper (SCP) and the Decision Coordination Paper (DCP).

The purpose of the ILSP is to:

- (a) Provide a complete plan for support of the fielded system;
- (b) Provide details of the ILS program and its relationship with overall program management;
- (c) Provide decision making bodies with the necessary information on ILS aspects for making sound decisions on further development and production of the basic system;
- (d) Provide the basis for the preparation of the ILS sections of the procurement package, e.g., statement of work (SOW), specification, and source selection and evaluation criteria;
- (e) Describe how readiness and sustainability will be achieved.

The ILSP is initially a section of the Program Management Plan (PMP) but, early in the Demonstration and Validation Phase, it is removed from the PMP and becomes a stand-

alone document. At a minimum, the ILSP is updated annually. A detailed outline of the ILSP is found in Appendix E.

#### **8.2.4 Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP)**

The CRLCMP is the primary planning document for computer resources throughout the system life cycle. It complements the Integrated Logistics Support Plan. The purpose of the CRLCMP is to:

- (a) Document the software support concept and the resources needed to achieve the support posture;
- (b) Document the computer resources development strategy;
- (c) Identify the applicable directives (regulations, operating instructions, technical orders, etc.) for managing computer resources in the system;
- (d) Define any changes or new directives needed for the operation or support of computer resources;
- (e) Define the scope of independent verification and validation (IV&V) efforts.

Development of the CRLCMP is initiated during the Concept Exploration phase. The CRLCMP is coordinated with the user and supporting organizations before release to the Full Scale Development solicitation.

During the Production and Deployment phases, the CRLCMP is updated, as required, to reflect significant changes in the system or its support environment. When updating the CRLCMP, sections that refer to accomplished events should be reworded as historical notes or deleted. After the system is

transitioned to the user the software support activity will assume responsibility for the CRLCMP. A detailed outline of the CRLCMP is found in Appendix F.

### **8.3 ENGINEERING STUDIES**

Systems engineering studies are based on the concept of a hierarchy of requirements starting with system level requirements and ending with detailed engineering specifications and data. System definition proceeds by refining each level of requirement into subordinate requirements until the entire system is described. Computer resources are considered as an integral part of the system and are subject to tradeoff and optimization studies. Systems engineering studies will normally include:

**Requirements Definition** - Requirements definition begins with the creation of the system level requirements specification. This definition may be spelled out in either the System/Segment Specification (SSS), the Prime Item Development Specification (PIDS), or the Critical Item Development Specification (CIDS). The developer then performs the necessary analysis to determine the preliminary allocation of the requirements between hardware and software. In addition, the developer begins work on the Preliminary Software Requirements Specification (SRS) and the Preliminary Interface Requirements Specification (IRS). The formal allocation of what is to be accomplished in hardware and what is to be accomplished in software is documented in the Systems/Segment Design Document (SSDD). These documents are necessary for the effective accomplishment of the software design. The System Specification and the SSDD are approved at the Systems Design Review (SDR) and a Functional Baseline established.

**Interface Definition** - The Computer Resources Working Group (CRWG) and the Interface Control Working Group address system and subsystem interface requirements that may affect computer resources. The requirements for these interfaces are documented in system specifications (i.e., SSS, PIDS, CIDS). They are furthered detailed in the IRS. The IRS and the SRS are later approved at the Software Specification Review and together these two documents formally define the Allocated Baseline.

**Tradeoff and Optimization** - Tradeoff and optimization studies should consider:

- (a) Tradeoffs between computer software and computer hardware;
- (b) Required computer processor architectural features such as memory size, speed, input and output capacity, and spare capacity;
- (c) Use of standard equipment, HOLs, instruction set architectures, and interfaces;
- (d) Alternate approaches for meeting system security requirements;
- (e) Improved supportability versus improved performance;
- (f) Use of existing government resources or commercial off-the-shelf resources versus new development.

**Feasibility Studies** - These studies determine the feasibility of alternative allocations of system requirements to computer resources and the derivation of data for formulating budgets and schedules.

**Risk Analysis** - Identify the major software development risks using Table 8-1 and incor-

porate into the system risk management plan or the CRLCMP.

**Software Support Studies** - Software support studies are conducted to refine the system support concept, to allocate software support requirements, and to identify operational system software.

## 8.4 THE COMPUTER RESOURCES WORKING GROUP (CRWG)

A CRWG should be established as early as possible during the CE Phase but no later than Milestone I. For modification programs, and those acquisitions closely related to ongoing programs, an existing CRWG may be used. The CRWG's role is to participate, in an advisory capacity, in all computer resources aspects of the program. This includes program management reviews, source selection evaluation boards, design reviews, and audits.

The CRWG is formally chartered by the program manager and should coordinate its activities with the operational user, the supporting organization, the interface control working group, and any other organization with an active interest in the program. At a minimum the CRWG will:

- (a) Advise the program manager in all areas relating to the acquisition and support of computer resources;
- (b) Generate the initial CRLCMP and update it as the program progresses;
- (c) Select a software support concept and document it in the CRLCMP;
- (d) Monitor compliance of the program with computer resources policy, plans, procedures, and standards;

CAUSE	ACTION
Lack of adequate definition of computer resource functional, interface, support, or performance requirements prior to structuring the program.  Poorly defined, complex, or untestable intra- or inter-system interfaces, including human interfaces.  Lack of stability in computer resource requirements during development.	System engineering techniques such as functional analyses, simulation, mathematical modeling, correctness proofs, and tradeoff analyses.  Incremental development strategies which tackle large, complex, and poorly understood requirements in smaller, more manageable parts.
Lack of government visibility into the contractor's software development effort.	Rigorous application of traditional cost, schedule, and performance tracking techniques with careful attention to earned value progress against measurable milestones. Since these techniques are almost always driven by the WBS, visibility of critical and high risk computer resources is a primary criterion for determining the appropriate level within the WBS for these components of the system.  Use of a risk tracking system to collect data on the status of identified high risk items. The output of this system should be a standard part of periodic reviews.  Use of independent verification and validation.
Performance requirements that push the state of the art.	Prototyping or duplicate development of key algorithms, concepts, and components.
Inaccurate, poorly defined, or nonexistent cost and schedule estimates for computer resource development.	Multi-source cost and schedule estimates using a variety of estimating techniques and models. Avoid basing all estimates on "lines of code" estimates derived from a single source.
Inadequate developer and acquisition manager capability or capacity for software development.  Inadequate, immature, or poorly integrated software development tools (e.g., compilers, linkers, loaders) & programming support environment.	Reviews of offerors sites to assess capability and capacity of development personnel, management structure and procedures, and facilities.
Lack of adequate spare computer hardware capacity (e.g., processor speed, memory, input/output, and secondary storage).	Early planning for spare capacity during development and support phases of the lifecycle; periodic reviews of capacity allocation, and projection of requirements trends.
Undefined or poorly defined software support concepts.	Rigorous adherence to the separation of mission software and system software into separate CSCIs.

**Table 8-1. Common Risks and Possible Corrective**

- (e) Insure that software testing is adequately addressed in the TEMP and monitor compliance as the program matures;
- (f) Identify and prioritize the required software quality factors such as interoperability, portability, flexibility, usability, reusability, maintainability, integrity, reliability, correctness, testability, and efficiency.
- (g) Define the scope of the IV&V effort and develop a recommended approach using contractor or government personnel;
- (i) Evaluate the use of standard equipment, HOLs, and instruction set architectures;
- (j) Evaluate the need for development of software tools and recommend a development approach

## 8.5 SYSTEM SECURITY

The Program Manager should review security directives and identify mission security needs early in the development cycle. Experience has shown that it is much cheaper to design security into the system from the outset than to add it on to a mature system. It is more cost-effective to include security in the initial design. A security requirements' analysis should be conducted even if funding is very limited and trusted security features are not incorporated into the system design.

The ability to evaluate the security of a system improves the user's confidence that the security mechanisms are sufficient and functioning. If security features are examined in the design phase, assessment criteria can be established in advance, and security features tested and evaluated throughout the development life cycle rather than at system deployment. This also makes it easier to satisfy the system certification and accreditation requirements. System certification ensures that technical computer security features have been tested and are shown to be adequate. System accreditation ensures that the system safeguards meet DOD operation security requirements..

Unfortunately, MIL-STD-2167A is silent on security and there are no security Data Item Descriptions referenced in that standard. DOD-STD-5200.28, *DOD Trusted Computer System Evaluation Criteria*, however, provides evaluation methods and criteria for system security. This book, generally called the "orange book" and published by the National Computer Security Center (NCSC), is supported by several related security guides. This group of documents is informally known as the "Rainbow Series". Security provisions must also be incorporated into planning documents, such as the PMP, TEMP, ILSP, and the

CRLCMP, and examined during the various engineering studies.

It is beyond the scope of this guide to provide complete information on system security; however, the PM is ultimately responsible for the security of system. It is imperative that the PM appoint a security manager early in the acquisition cycle.

## 8.6 CONTRACTUAL CONSIDERATIONS

A recurring activity conducted by the program office is that of selecting one or more contractors and putting them on contract. Although the intensity of the activity and the number of contractors to be evaluated may differ, the process of selecting a contractor(s) is the same regardless of the phase of development. The three major activities performed are: generating a source selection plan, generating a request for proposal package, and conducting the source selection process.

### 8.6.1 Source Selection Plan (SSP)

An outline of a typical SSP is given in Appendix G. The SSP is a key document for initiating and conducting a source selection. As shown in Appendix G, the SSP should address mission critical computer resources. It is prepared by the program office and must reflect applicable program management direction or guidance. For the Air Force, this guidance is reflected in the Program Management Directive (PMD). The SSP is a plan for organizing and conducting the evaluation and analysis of proposals and a roadmap for the selection of a source or sources.

The SSP must be submitted sufficiently in advance of the planned acquisition action to facilitate review and approval by the Source Selection Authority (SSA) and early establishment of the Source Selection Advisory

Council (SSAC) and the Source Selection Evaluation Board (SSEB).

### **8.6.2 Request for Proposal Package (RFP)**

The RFP package must be sufficiently detailed to allow responding offerors to adequately address system requirements and to provide other information necessary for evaluation and award. The RFP package typically consists of a requirements specification(s), instructions to offerors, proposal evaluation criteria, a statement of work, a work breakdown structure, requirements for deliverable items, and special contract requirements. Supporting information that expands on the system operations and support concepts, including the CRLCMP, may be attached to the RFP package.

Even though the RFP is prepared by the program office, it is good practice to solicit inputs from the using and supporting organizations. They usually provide valuable insight into the operational and support environment.

#### **8.6.2.1 Requirements Specification(s)**

The requirements specification(s) included in the RFP is dependent on the phase of the system development being undertaken. If one is contracting for the CE phase, then the specification would be an overall system specification. For the D/V phase, the specification would be the System/Segment Specification. For the FSD phase, the specifications would be the refined System/Segment Specification and could include the Software Requirements Specification and the Interface Requirements Specification. Appendix H lists the various Data Item Descriptions (DIDs) called out by DOD-STD-2167A which govern the format and content of the required specifications.

#### **8.6.2.2 Instructions to Offerors**

In addition to specifying proposal form and content, the instructions to offerors must require submission of such documents as a Software Development Plan, a Configuration Management Plan, and a Software Quality Program Plan as part of the proposal. These plans should include the offerors' software development organization, their development methodology, their management philosophy, and their procedures for controlling and assessing development progress. Appendix H lists the various DIDs which describe the format and content of these documents.

The instructions to offerors are the mechanism for ensuring that offerors address critical software issues such as:

- (a) The methodology used to perform software sizing and cost estimating and the approach to be followed during software development;
- (b) The rationale used for the computer resources timing and sizing estimates;
- (c) A description of any teaming and subcontractor arrangements;
- (d) The skill levels required for computer resources development and their availability within the corporate structure;
- (e) The method to be used for risk control;
- (f) Any planned use of firmware;
- (g) Reusing or modifying existing software;
- (h) A clear definition of all assumptions used during proposal preparation;

- (i) Plans for the development of prototype software;
- (j) Plans and procedures for generating and using software metrics.
- (k) The computer language that is to be used
- (l) The level of system security required.

#### **8.6.2.3 Proposal Evaluation Criteria**

The evaluation criteria must be based on the requirements within the RFP. This includes computer resource development and management activities and the offerors' software management plans described in the Software Development Plan and other applicable documents. The criteria in the RFP should be listed in relative order of importance. The evaluation criteria must include the availability of software, documentation, and the rights necessary to meet life cycle needs and the compatibility of the proposed design with the support concept defined in the CRLCMP. This will ensure that the design is modifiable and that proposed support resources and methods are adequate. When the processing of sensitive or classified information is involved, the program office must ensure that computer security is also included in the evaluation criteria.

#### **8.6.2.4 Statement of Work (SOW)**

The SOW will identify the applicable program management, development, test, training, installation and support tasks to be performed. More specifically, the SOW will:

- (a) Identify clear and concise statements of specific task;
- (b) Address the planned use of an Independent Verification and Validation contrac-

tor and the type and amount of support expected from the development contractor;

- (c) Tailor all contractually required standards and specifications to the program needs;
- (d) Address the planned use of government provided operational and environmental simulators, support equipment, or other software programs (e.g., compilers);
- (e) Require comprehensive layout of program schedules to include reviews, technical interchange meetings, audits, and testing;
- (f) Address the requirements for prototype software development;
- (g) Address the requirements for generating and using software metrics data.
- (h) Address the appropriate trusted system accreditation and certification requirements.

#### **8.6.2.5 Work Breakdown Structure**

A preliminary work breakdown structure (WBS) may be included in the RFP package. The contractor will be expected to develop their own WBS containing additional levels of detail.

#### **8.6.2.6 Deliverable Items**

Deliverable computer hardware and software, including support and test software, will be specified as contract line items (CLINs) in the schedule of the contract. The CLINs should specifically call out deliveries of such items as operational flight programs (OFPs), test program sets (TPSs), simulation software, and incremental deliveries of various versions of all of these. Documentation requirements will be identified in the Contract Data Requirements List (CDRL),

and software media delivery requirements will be specified in the Software Requirements Specification which will be listed in the CDRL. For software, deliverable items will include complete source code in a form suitable for compilation or assembly and the complete object code in a form suitable for loading and executing in either operational or support computers. The CDRL may include the documentation needed for developing, testing, operating, and supporting the system and for training personnel. Appendix H lists the various DIDs for this additional documentation. If all the documentation needs cannot be identified before contract award, the CDRL may include a report that will identify data items needed to satisfy the system support and operational concepts. A Data Accession List should be used to identify the contractor's informal documentation to be made available for government review.

#### 8.6.2.7 Special Contract Requirements

Special requirements are tailored contractual clauses incorporated into the contract to insure the government's right to computer software and to provide adequate protection whenever commercial off-the-shelf software is used.

**Restricted Rights Software** - The RFP should require the offeror to identify and cost all restricted rights computer software or equipment, associated documentation, and support items required to be delivered, or subject to order, under the contract.

**Commercial Off-the-shelf Software (COTS)** - Procedures may be developed and incorporated into the contract to ensure that the contractor reviews all subcontractor or vendor products and that all commercial hardware and software in the system are supported to the correct configuration level. The

contractor should be made responsible for maintaining engineering compatibility between all system hardware and software, including the incorporation of newly released versions of software. Operating system software falls into this category.

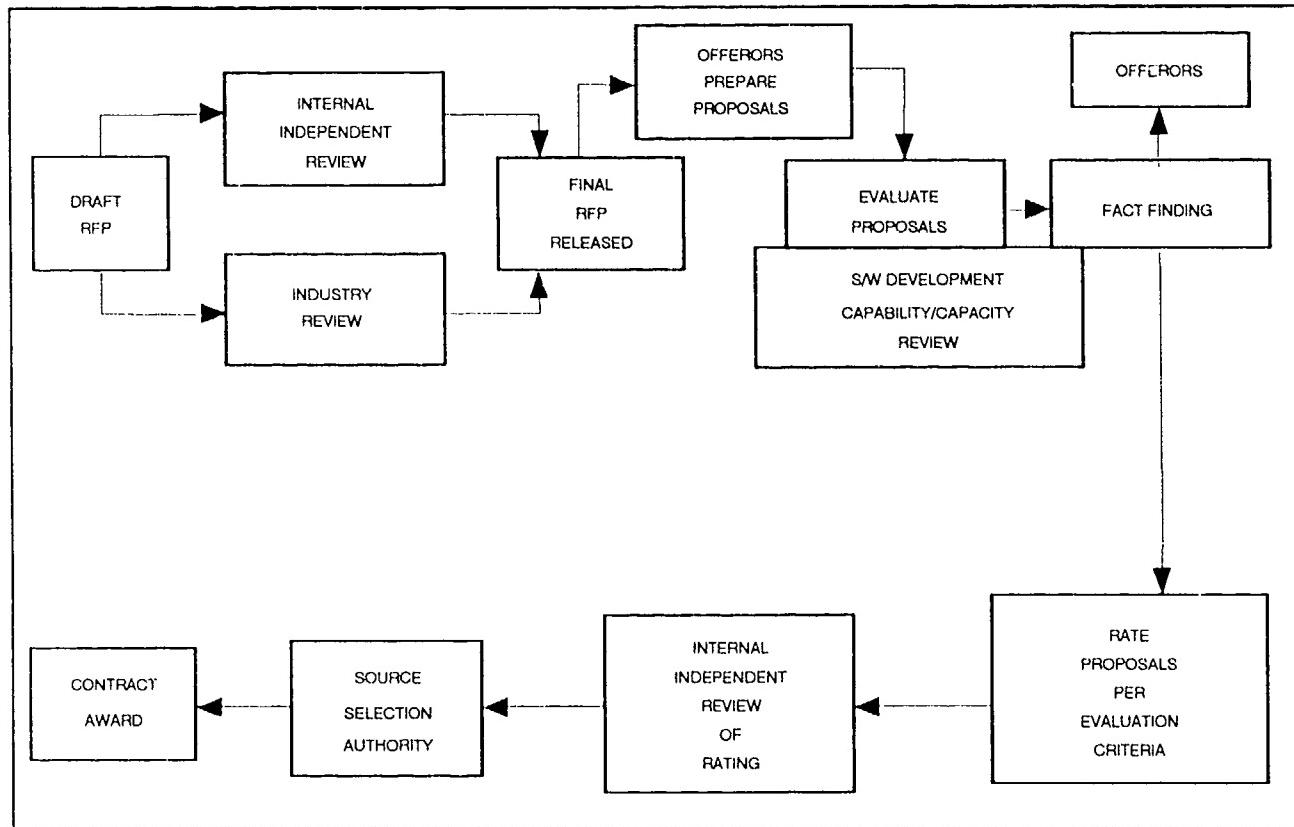
#### 8.6.3 Source Selection Process

The principal objective of the source selection process is to select the source (offeror) whose proposal has the highest degree of credibility and whose performance can be expected to best meet the government's requirements at an affordable cost. The process should provide an impartial, equitable, and comprehensive evaluation of the competitors' proposals and related capabilities. The process should be accomplished with minimum complexity and maximum efficiency and effectiveness. It should be structured to properly balance technical, financial, and economic considerations consistent with the phase of the acquisition, program requirements, and business and legal constraints. A typical source selection process is depicted in Figure 8-1.

##### 8.6.3.1 Draft RFP

If it is at all possible, the process should begin with a draft RFP which consists of preliminary versions of a statement of work, a specification, schedules, a contract data requirements list (CDRL), and evaluation criteria. Unfortunately, time and resources do not always permit a program office to generate and circulate a draft RFP.

By circulating a draft RFP among the various internal government organizations (i.e., contracts, legal) the RFP can be evaluated for consistency and content. These organizations can provide valuable comments which help to ensure that the final RFP doesn't become bogged down because of major shortcomings.

**Fig. 8-1 Source Selection Process**

An industry review can also be very helpful. Industry may provide constructive information on the potential technical, schedule, and cost risks associated with the intended procurement. For example, they may provide alternative approaches to high risk areas and indicate areas which are ambiguous, contradictory, or likely to be major cost drivers.

All industry comments, however, should be carefully examined to separate fact from marketing information. Some companies may not be able to resist the temptation to suggest changes or additions to the RFP which could enhance their competitive posture. In spite of this danger, industry comments can be tremendously useful.

A final RFP can be prepared and released once comments have been received from industry and other internal organizations. While the bidders are preparing their proposals, the program office will be finaliz-

ing the source selection organization and the proposal evaluation criteria. Although the general evaluation criteria have already been released with the RFP, specific sub-criteria and factors may still require fine tuning.

#### **8.6.3.2 Populating the Source Selection Organization**

One of the constant problems faced by program managers is finding qualified software individuals willing and able to be away from their jobs for an extended period of time. Source selections can take anywhere from three to six months to complete. Since quality software individuals are already in short supply, a program manager may have to resort to innovative means for acquiring them. If one or two experienced software people are already on the staff, then the problem becomes more manageable. The task of finding additional knowledgeable but less experienced software people is a bit easier.

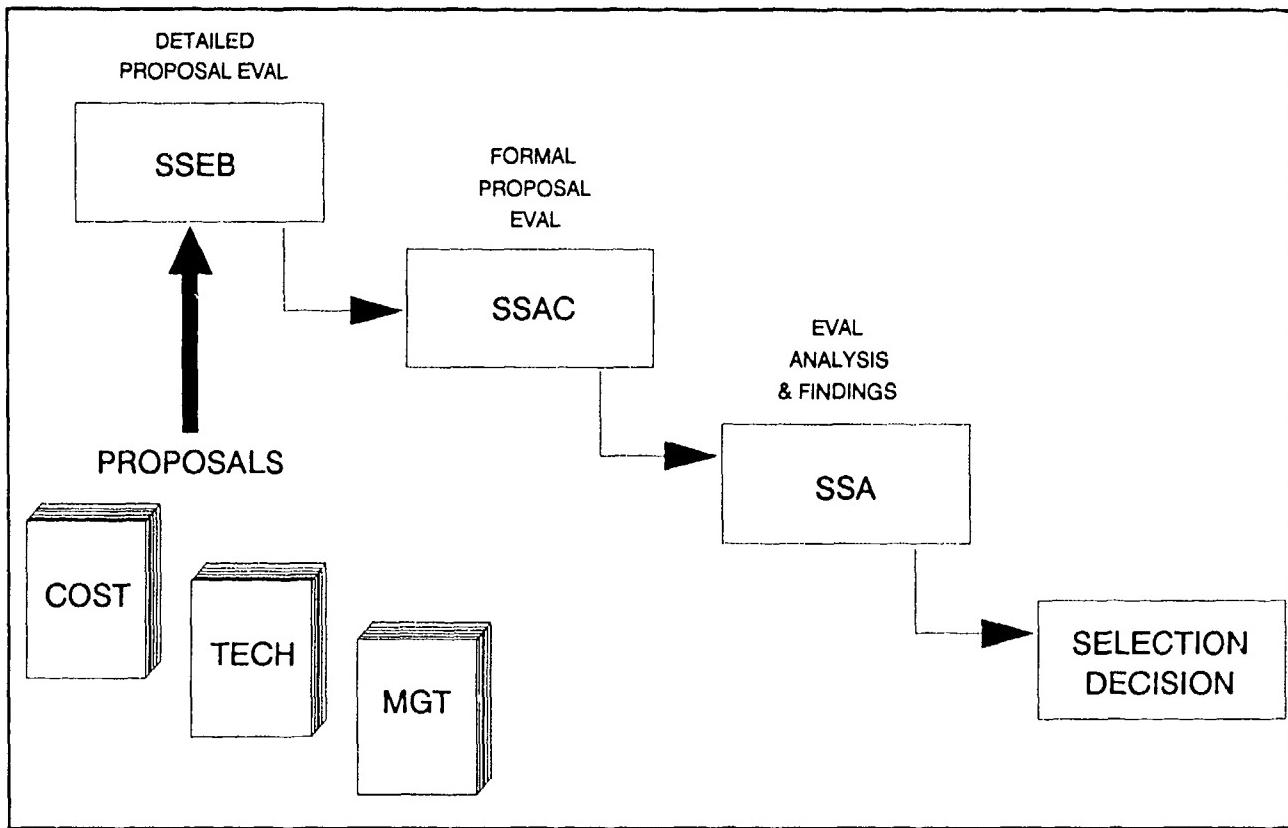


Fig. 8-2 Evaluation Process

The problem is more difficult if a program manager does not have in-house expertise. The first place to look for experienced software personnel is in another program office that may be willing to release individual(s) for the duration of the source selection. Another source could be the various laboratories within the command or service. A sister service may be able to provide temporary software expertise. There are also federally established, not-for-profit organizations such as Aerospace Corp., the Mitre Corp., and the Software Engineering Institute whose employees routinely participate in government source selections. Other corporations exist which may be able to participate in a source selection. These corporations are primarily analyses oriented and normally do not produce or develop hardware for the commercial market. The Rand Corp and the Charles Draper Laboratory fall into this category. The lead software individual, however, must be a government employee.

### 8.6.3.3 Evaluation Process

The evaluation process itself is well defined and regulated by the DOD and service peculiar regulations and procedures. Figure 8-2 depicts the typical evaluation process which begins with the receipt of cost, technical and management proposal volumes, as a minimum. The Source Selection Evaluation Board (SSEB) is comprised of the functional area experts who actually perform the detailed evaluation. Since this is a time-consuming but critical step, it is important that the lead individual expedite the process. Endless discussions over trivial or irrelevant points cannot be tolerated. Even when serious topics are the source of major disagreements among the evaluators, the lead software individual must force the people involved to come to a reasonable and timely consensus. Minority opinions and views should be aired and, at the discretion of the lead software person, documented and

presented to the Source Selection Advisory Council (SSAC) for resolution. By the same token, an individual's infatuation with a particular technology should not be allowed to unduly bias the proposal ratings. For example, an individual's infatuation with object-oriented design, should not interfere with his appraisal of a more conventional approach (e.g., functional decomposition).

Once the SSEB completes its evaluation, the results are presented to the SSAC. The SSAC, which is composed of senior government personnel, then evaluates the analysis and findings of the SSEB and presents the results to the Source Selection Authority (SSA). The SSA is the official designated to direct the source selection and to make the final source selection decision.

#### **8.6.3.4 Evaluating Offeror's Proposal**

Since every program has unique requirements, it is beyond the scope of this guidebook to provide specific information on what is important in a software source selection. In general, however, the software evaluation assesses the technical adequacy of the proposed computer system architecture to satisfy the weapon system requirements. Items that are evaluated include:

- (a) The throughput and memory capability of the proposed computers;
- (b) Future vendor support for commercially supplied items such as tape drives, disk drives, controllers, etc.;
- (c) Computer resources interfaces to the rest of the system architecture and human operators;
- (d) Adequacy of the operating system or software executive;

- (e) Availability, currency, and usage of software development tools and methods;
- (f) Organic supportability of computer hardware and software;
- (g) The offeror's Software Development Plan and software development standards and procedures;
- (h) The offeror's software development capability and capacity.

It is important to emphasize the need to perform an integrated, comprehensive evaluation of the offerors' total proposal. This usually means that technical evaluators must also review the management and cost proposals. The cost evaluators normally concentrate on accounting and costing consistency and completeness. They are not qualified to pass judgment on whether a proposed number of man-hours are sufficient for a particular analysis or effort. Only the technical evaluators can make this assessment. Likewise the technical evaluators can also assess whether a particular management organization or procedure is consistent with the technical effort proposed. One is not advocating that all technical evaluators review cost and management data. What is being proposed is that one or two key individuals from the technical panel make a top-level review of cost and management data for realism and consistency.

#### **8.6.3.5 Software Development Capability Capacity Review**

Figure 8-1 shows a software development capability and capacity review (SDCCR) occurring as part of the source selection process. The SDCCR has been successfully used at the Aeronautical Systems Division of the Air Force Systems Command at Wright-Patter-

son AFB. It is described in ASD Pamphlet 800-5, *Software Development Capability and Capacity Review* [1].

**Purpose** - The SDCCR is intended to review and assess an offeror's specific capability and capacity to develop the software required on a particular weapon system program as defined in the RFP. This review process is designed to be incorporated as an integral part of the FSD source selection process. The review process accomplishes three related objectives. First, the acquisition management team gains an understanding of the offeror's software development methods and tools. Second, the capability and capacity of the offeror to develop the required software in a disciplined software development process is determined. Third, the review process elicits a contractual commitment by the offeror to implement the methods, tools, practices and procedures which form the discipline and structure for this software development process [1].

**Process Summary** - The SDCCR process is accomplished during the FSD RFP preparation and source selection phase. The RFP includes the requirement that the offeror team provides specific information describing their software development methods, and include examples of how the methods have been applied on past or on-going programs. The SDCCR source selection team reviews this information and then conducts an in-plant review with the offeror's team. This review is based on a specific set of SDCCR questions which are provided with the RFP to the offerors and are found in Attachment 4 of ASD Pamphlet 800-5. Following this one to two day in-plant review, the offeror's capability and capacity to develop the required software is assessed using the predefined RFP standards. This evaluation becomes an integral part of the program source selection and forms

part of the basis for the award. It is highly recommended that offerors conduct this review with their subcontractors prior to the government's in-plant review [1].

**Review Areas and Factors** - The SDCCR is usually organized into five major areas: management approach, management tools, development process, personnel resources, and Ada technology. These areas are in turn organized into factors as shown in Table 8-2. Other factors may be added to this review as a function of unique program requirements.

**Team Composition** - The SDCCR is performed by the source selection team. This approach is fundamental to achieving the multiple objectives of the SDCCR. The usual team composition is as follows:

- (a) Team Chief - Computer resources systems engineer or senior software engineer from the engineering staff;
- (b) Program Manager/Project Manager;
- (c) Software Manager;
- (d) Software Engineer;
- (e) Contracting Officer;

For smaller programs, it is possible for one individual to perform the program/project and software management role, and one individual to perform the chief/lead and software engineering role. In addition, it is desirable to include the following participation on the team:

- (a) Product and Quality Assurance;
- (b) Configuration Data Management;
- (c) Logistics;

- (d) Cost Analyst;
- (e) Defense Contract Management Command (DCMC) personnel.

It is recognized that too large a team is counterproductive. The key is to perform the review with a small, knowledgeable group of software experienced acquisition personnel.

#### 8.6.3.6 Software Capability Evaluation

Another method of assessing the contractor's software engineering capability is the Software Capability Evaluation (SCE). The method has been used in competitive bids for programs at the Naval Air Development Center, the Air Force Electronic Systems

<b>MANAGEMENT APPROACH</b>
- Management Organization
- Software Management System
- Software Configuration Management
- Software System Organization and Structure
- Software Subcontracting
- Software Planning
- Software Quality/Product Assurance
- Contract Control Methods
<b>MANAGEMENT TOOLS</b>
- Internal Management Standards and Tools
- Software Size, Manpower, Schedule, and Cost Estimating
- Contract Work Breakdown Structure (CWBS)
- Software Work Definition
- Schedule Definition and Statusing
- Software Cost Performance Reporting System
<b>DEVELOPMENT PROCESS</b>
- Internal Development Standards and Procedures
- Software Engineering
- Software Development Tools and Facilities
- Software Test and Verification
- Software Documentation Approach
- Internal Independent Verification and Validation
<b>PERSONNEL RESOURCES</b>
- Estimating Software Personnel Requirements
- Manpower Needs and Qualifications
- Managing Software Personnel Resources
- Company Workload Profile
<b>Ada TECHNOLOGY</b>
- Management Process
- Development Process and Environment (Tool Set)
- Design Process and Methodology
- Personnel Skills and Qualifications
- Capability Demonstration and Risk Management

Table 8-2 SDCCR Factors

Division, and the Army Communications and Electronics Command [2].

**Purpose** - The SCE is the Software Engineering Institute's (SEI's) method for assessing a contractor's software engineering capability [2]. It is used during the source selection and contract monitoring phases of software-intensive or software-critical system acquisitions.

The SCE augments the acquisition process by determining a contractor's strengths and weaknesses with respect to a maturity model. In addition, it establishes "software capability" as a criterion for source selection by providing an orderly way of comparing offerors' software capability against a standard set of criteria. This is an important advantage. This method should be used to augment current source selection and contract monitoring software risk assessment steps.

The SEI, with help from the MITRE Corporation, developed this method for the U. S. Air Force. It was motivated by the increasing importance of software in DOD acquisitions and the need for the services to evaluate more effectively software contractors' abilities to perform software engineering.

The SEI is striving toward two major goals in this effort:

- (a) providing a standardized software process evaluation method which is documented, available for review and comment, and periodically modified as experience is gained with its use;
- (b) making that evaluation a public process which is defined in advance and for which contractors can prepare.

By enabling a consistent measurement of contractors' software development capability,

the SCE method should improve contractor and acquisition management.

**Process Summary -** The Program Manager and the Procuring Contracting Officer include SCE wording in the Source Selection Plan and the RFP. They also ensure that proper training in SCE is provided to acquisition personnel and the Capability Evaluation Team (CET). In their proposals the offerors will respond to an SCE questionnaire and provide a list of candidate projects, in the

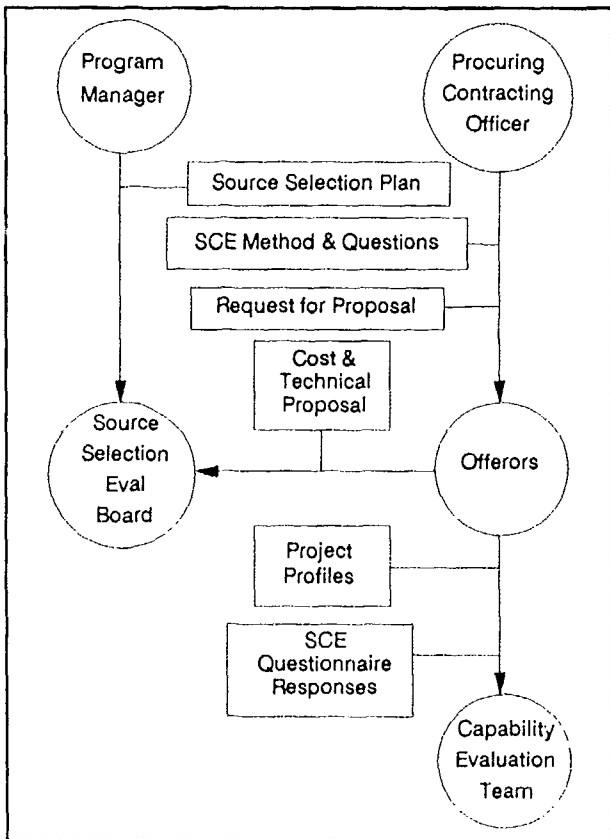


Fig. 8-3 SCE in the RFP

form of "project profiles", for evaluation during the CET's In-Plant Review (Figure 8-3) [3].

After the CET reviews the responses to the questionnaire and the listing of candidate projects, four projects are selected for the In-Plant Review. An agenda and any requests for further documentation are sent to the offeror before the CET visit (Figure 8-4). After

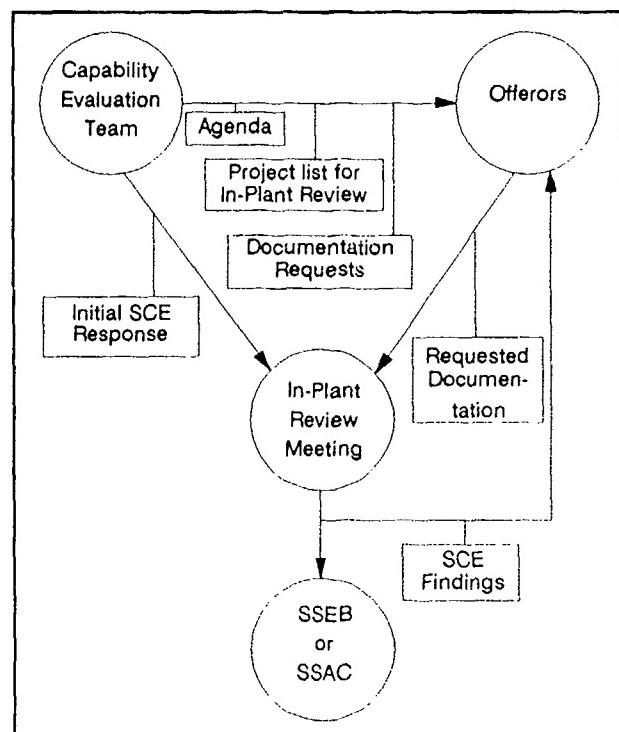


Fig. 8-4 SCE in the In-Plant Review

the In-Plant Review the CET will submit a report of their findings for the SSAC. The report addresses key software areas such as project management, software quality assurance, and configuration management (Figure 8-5).

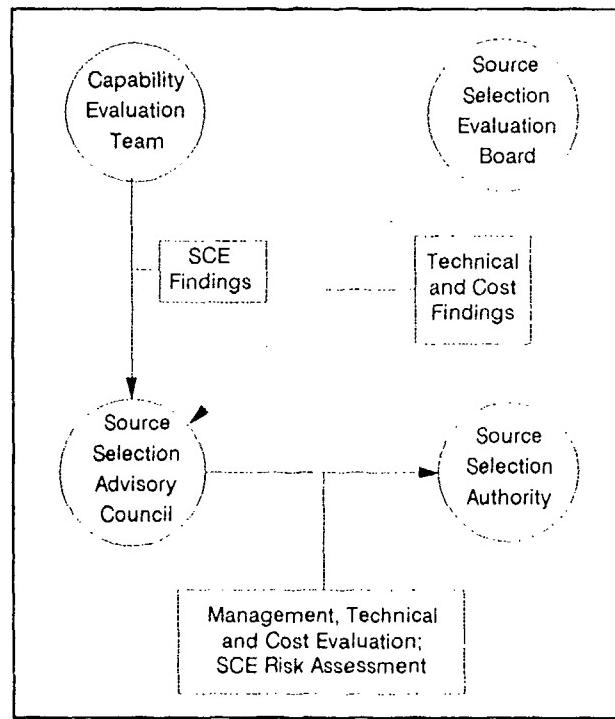


Fig. 8-5 Indicating Program Risk

## 8.7 REFERENCES

1. ASD Pamphlet 800-5, *Software Development Capability and Capacity Review*, HQ Aeronautical Systems Division, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio 45433, 10 Sep 1987.
2. Humphrey , W. S. , *et al.*, *A Method for Assessing the Software Engineering Capability of Contractors*, Technical Report SMU/SEI-87-TR-23 Software Engineering Institute, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, Preliminary Version, Sep, 1987.
3. Johnson, Albert, *Software Capability Evaluation Implementation Handbook: Source Selection*, Draft V0.21, Software Engineering Institute, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, February 9, 1990.

# CHAPTER 9

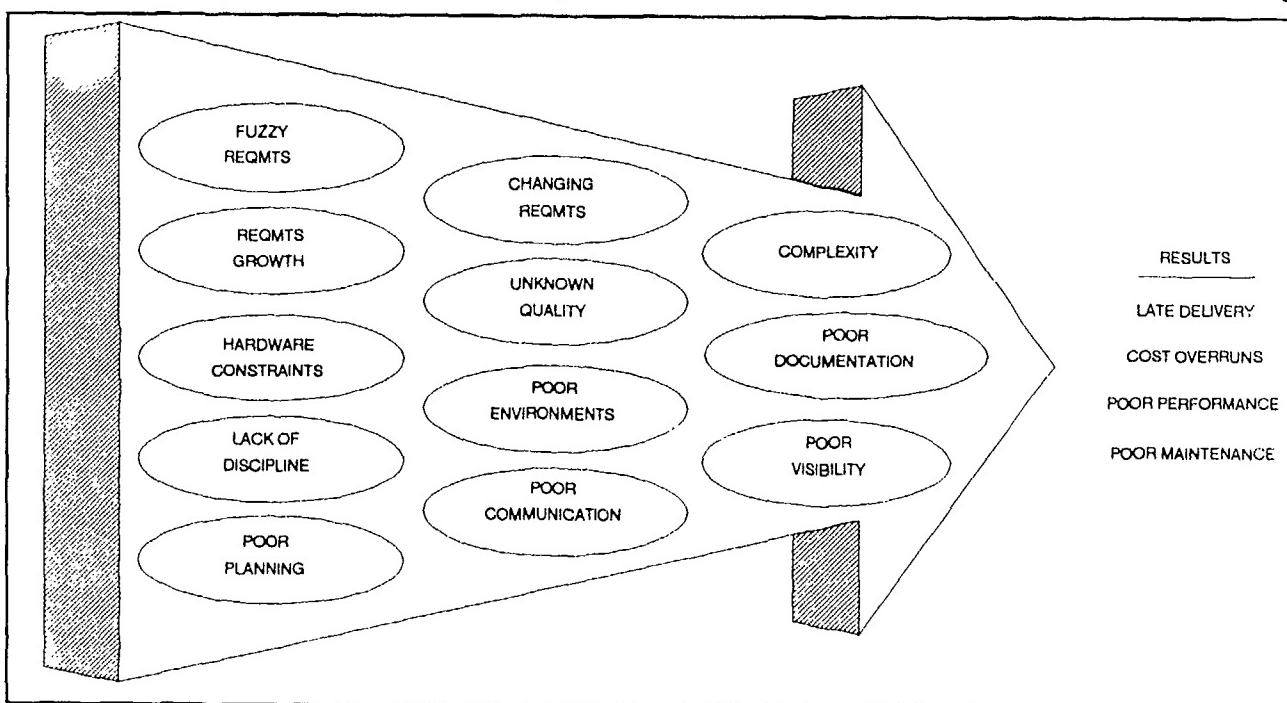
---

## MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES

### 9.1 INTRODUCTION

Managing software development is one of the biggest challenges facing today's government program manager (PM). The classic problems contributing to this challenge are illustrated in Figure 9-1. Some of these pro-

blems are beyond the control of the PM. For example, there is very little a PM can do about changing or growing requirements because of an evolving threat, or fuzzy requirements because of lack of details on the threat. Long



**Fig. 9-1 Classic Software Development Problems**

lead times often force systems development to be initiated before the threat has been completely evaluated. Shooting at a moving target of changing or evolving requirements is a reality of all new systems acquisitions.

There are, however, many problems which can be minimized or eliminated by the PM. For example, there are certain actions that can be taken by a PM to eliminate poor engineering discipline, poor documentation, or poor planning. This chapter will address methods and principles which can help a PM deal with the complexity and difficulty of large scale software system development. In dealing with these problems, the common denominator is a disciplined system engineering approach incorporating the principles of software engineering.

## **9.2 SOFTWARE ENGINEERING**

As mentioned in Chapter 2, the term software engineering is relatively new. Today there is some debate as to what constitutes software engineering, but most people agree that applying the term software engineering to the software development process implies:

- (a) The application of proven methods at each step of the process, including accepted practices, standards and procedures;
- (b) The development and use of software tools and aids;
- (c) The generation of specific documents during the various stages of the development process;
- (d) A traceable path from the system requirements down to the final deliverable product.

For these proven methods to be effective in controlling software development, they must

be accepted and practiced by the software developer. Mere proposal promises and contractual language are not sufficient. To achieve quality software which performs to specifications, is reliable, and is reasonably priced, these methods must be ingrained in the contractor's software organization. Table 9-1 lists some of the proven methods for software development.

All engineering disciplines develop tools and aids to help the practitioner apply engineering theory. Because software engineering is a relatively young discipline, it doesn't have the wealth of tools so readily available to its older sister disciplines. Much progress is being made, however, and currently available tools and aids include:

- (a) Structured design and programming;
- (b) Inspections and walkthroughs;
- (c) Computer aided software engineering;
- (d) Program design languages;

- Visible Training and Education Program
- Institutionalized Practices and Procedures
- Defined Roles With Systems, Hardware, and Test Organizations
- Adherence to a Software Development Plan
- Institutionalized Internal Inspection Procedures
- Structured Design and Programming
- Product Oriented WBS for Financial Control
- Internal Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V)
- Strong Configuration Management
  - Software Development Library
  - Problem/Trouble Reporting System
- Visible Status Information

**Table 9-1 Proven Methods for Software Development**

- (e) The Ada programming language;
- (f) Object Oriented Design and Programming.

Documenting each step of the software development process is absolutely essential. Not only does one need an effective way to communicate the rate of progress, one also needs a well-documented final product. Since documentation is the only tangible evidence of the resulting product, documentation must be generated as one progresses through the various stages of software development. One cannot do a very effective job of generating software documentation after the fact.

One must have a clearly defined path from the top level system requirements down to the various modules or units of code. This ensures that the delivered product satisfies the system requirements. It can be accomplished through the use of a requirements' matrix which shows how each system level requirement is satisfied by a particular module or segment of code. This process can be automated.

### 9.3 GUIDELINES AND RULES

Over the past 30 years, certain guidelines and rules have evolved to help a PM successfully complete a software development program. One must keep in mind that the guidelines and rules given below are not just recipes or checklists to be blindly followed in order to ensure success. PMs must understand how to customize these guidelines and rules to the requirements of the program. They may choose to ignore any one of them as long as they are aware of the risks and have planned for dealing with them. The following guidelines provide the PM with software development planning and organizational

principles which place software development in the perspective of the overall picture of system development:

- (a) When planning and directing a program, PMs must make decisions based on a "system" perspective. They must review their alternatives and not allow either hardware or software to exclusively drive their decision. All decisions must consider long term system effects.
- (b) PMs must provide a forum for integrating the system development. Several techniques are available and should be part of both the government's and the contractor's review process. These techniques include stringent interface controls, reviews, and audits. All interfaces between software modules and between software and hardware must be clearly defined and strenuously controlled. Techniques such as reviews and audits will be discussed in the next section.
- (c) Large investments up front can have significant leverage on reducing later system operation and support costs. Investing resources during the system and software requirements analysis phases can result in a better understanding of the user's requirements and a more stable baseline for design. Early expenditure of resources also provides the greatest amount of leverage in preventing errors. The bulk of the errors (30% to 70%) can be detected during the time when error correction is the cheapest [2].
- (d) Software resource planning must remain stable once the program starts. Software development has an inherent resource and schedule profile which means that the overall schedule cannot be stretched out without adversely affecting software development. More important, squeezing the schedule can be a prescription for disaster. It is not always

possible to add manpower to solve a software schedule slip [3].

(e) The software architecture should be the major driver in determining hardware partitioning. In the past, PMs paid more attention to hardware because they understood it best. Today the PM must consider the real-time requirements of the system and whether parallel processing and/or distributed processing will meet the overall requirements. The software architecture will often drive the hardware architecture.

(f) Identification of the software architecture should be performed simultaneously with the requirements definition and systems analysis tasks. To accomplish adequate hardware and software tradeoffs, the software must be viewed not only as the system integrator but as a system in its own right. Software development is usually in the critical path of the overall system development.

(g) The PM should stimulate innovation and not be stifled by rules and regulation. "Thought first, regulations second" should be the theme pursued by all system managers. New approaches should not be surreptitiously dismissed. DOD-STD-2167A, "*Defense System Software Development*," is only a start and better approaches will evolve. This is not to say that DOD-STD-2167A stifles innovation. Although the standard embraces the "waterfall" approach to the software development process, it does allow for other advances such as rapid prototyping, evolutionary development, and other process models. In practice, the waterfall model is best suited for "precedented" systems (i.e., systems that have been developed at least once). For "unprecedented" systems, or systems that are totally new, other models such as Boehm's "spiral" model may be more appropriate.

(h) PMs must plan for growth and evolution. Experience has shown that the user cannot initially handle all of the new functions at once, even if the developers can deliver it [4]. Fox cites the example of the Apollo command and control system developed by IBM. When the program manager was asked why there were over fourteen (14) releases to the software, he replied that there were two major reasons for this. First, the hundreds of operators monitoring consoles and interacting with the computer *could not absorb* operating procedures in big doses -- they had to absorb them a piece at a time. Capability is best provided piecemeal. Second, they could not predict very far in advance what the users would want or what would be needed in the control system [4]. The software architecture and implementation, therefore, should be specifically pointed toward maximum modularity, changeability, and growth potential. The PM's primary concern should be life cycle cost. Post deployment software support needs to be examined early during development to provide for cost effective lifetime support.

(i) The procurement process should allow for a flexible, robust, and expandable software design. Ways must be found to reward innovative contractors. Some suggestions are to consider award fees or cost incentives based on post-delivery operation and support. The fees or incentives could be based on the ability to perform the intended functions, ease of support, ease of modification, utility of documentation, and effectiveness of the human interfaces. The intent should be to force the developer to focus on long term goals and a supportable system. Also important, but more difficult to identify, are the front end decisions and methods that achieve these goals. What the developer does in the beginning has the most influence on the end

- Is a mechanism used for ensuring traceability between the software top-level and detailed designs?
- Are internal software design reviews conducted?
- Is a mechanism used for controlling changes to the software design?
- Is a mechanism used for ensuring traceability between detailed design and code?
- Are formal records maintained of unit (module) development progress?
- Are software code reviews conducted?
- Is a mechanism used for controlling changes to the code?  
(Who can make changes and under which circumstances?)
- Is a mechanism used for configuration management of the software tools used in the development process?
- Is a mechanism used for verifying that the samples examined by the software QA are truly representative of the work performed?
- Is there a mechanism for assuring the regression testing is routinely performed?
- Is there a mechanism for assuring the adequacy of regression testing?

**Table 9-2 Process Control**

product. The developer must begin with a good process already in place.

#### **9.4 PROCESS CONTROL**

Process control is the key to achieving software quality. The process is the method used by the contractor for developing software. Achieving control of the process means that the process is predictable and measurable. A controlled process will minimize variability. How does a PM assess the contractor's process control system and procedures? Table 9-2 provides a series of questions developed by the Software Engineering Institute [5] as an aid in making this assessment. The PM must know that the process represents the contractor's commitment,

philosophy, methodology, procedures, and standards for doing business. Process control and process management are principles of the Deming philosophy [6] for customer satisfaction. Application of Deming's philosophy requires the commitment of top management. That is why it is so important to select the right contractor; these values are not learned overnight.

What follows are some program management guidelines which focus on the day-to-day management of software development.

**All Software Tasks Must be Discrete** - This guideline is fundamental in determining how well the contractor can plan the effort. PMs must not allow level of effort or percentage

complete approaches because this closes the door on program progress visibility. The contractor must be able to define the work packages associated with the work breakdown structure (WBS) in sufficient detail to control and manage the effort. Each task should have a definite start, a definite end date, and a specific output. These tasks are normally on the order of 30 to 90 man-days in duration. Planning is usually accomplished as a rolling wave, the immediate six months or more are planned in detail with the remaining effort generally only visible at higher levels in the WBS. The entire effort should be totally scoped in time and resources at the very beginning of the project. If the program uncertainties are too great, this may not be possible.

**Quantitative Requirements are Managed Through Margins** - Quantitative requirements lend themselves to measurable control methods. Computer memory and throughput, for example, are often tracked during development. In the beginning, estimates of software size and timing will be made and compared against target values to determine margins. Later, design language estimates can be made and these estimates will continue through the design process. As code is written, actual measurements can be made. Early planning should allow for contractor and government margins with the use of a disciplined and documented control system. One approach is to baseline an estimate of the memory and throughput utilization on a monthly basis. An alert or trigger threshold value can initiate action should the threshold values be exceeded.

**Identify and Track Risk Areas** - The contractor and PM should be working as a team to manage program risk. An important ingredient of any program is to assess and reduce the risk as early as possible and before

Milestone II. Risk management is an ongoing process. The first step is to identify risk areas, document them in the Software Development Plan, and devise a scheme for dealing with each risk item. These items are then tracked throughout development. A convenient method is to have a "Top Ten" list of risk areas that are tracked at least on a monthly basis along with a contingency plan for mitigating the identified risks. The plan should establish risk reduction objectives and schedules, assign responsibility and priority for risk reduction tasks, and develop a method for periodic reviews and assessments. Various management techniques to reduce risks have already been mentioned and include:

- (a) Rapid prototyping;
- (b) Incremental development;
- (c) Internal (government) program reviews (at least monthly);
- (d) Top Ten list review;
- (e) Early demonstrations and testing of risk items;
- (f) Government inspections and audits of the software development process.

Some potential problem areas include:

- (a) Unrealistic cost and schedule;
- (b) Vague or incomplete requirements;
- (c) Inexperienced developers;
- (d) Inadequate development environment (tools and methodology).

**Identify and Track Special Interest Items** - Special interest items such as Government

Furnished Items (hardware, software and data) and subcontract items should also be tracked. Any items delivered to the contractor or received from the contractor are candidates for tracking. Certain critical internal deliveries such as code delivered for testing are candidates as well. The same approach used for tracking the risk items above can also be used to track special interest items.

**Requirements Must be Testable and Traceable** - Requirements must be testable in order to validate the system performance. In some cases, actual testing may be impractical due to physical constraints, cost, or other considerations. When this is the case, system performance must be validated through inference or analysis and reflected in a testability matrix. Traceability is a key factor throughout development and becomes even more important during follow-on support. Requirements must be traceable from the system specification down through design, integration testing and DT&E. Traceability must occur in both directions--results of a test report must track back to the requirements. The only effective way to handle this for large programs is through some form of automation. Requirements' traceability should be an integral part of the contractor's configuration management process.

**Use Checklists for Design Reviews** - Without adequate preparation design reviews can become nothing more than hectic "dog and pony shows." Design Reviews should be a major part of the software quality program. Program office personnel should be prepared for a review by arming themselves with appropriate analyses and a checklist of important and critical questions and adhering as much, as possible, to an agreed to formal agenda. The PM must do his homework through verification and analyses of critical areas that support the design approach. MIL-

STD-1521B, *Technical Reviews and Audits for Systems, Equipments, and Computer Software*, provides guidance on preparing checklists for various reviews. The checklists should also include special interest items and risk areas.

**Formal Reviews Must be Viewed as Quality Gates** - PMs must approach the formal review as a checkpoint for determining whether or not the project is ready to proceed to the next phase. A contractor should not be allowed to complete a design review if it hasn't satisfied all the requirements imposed by the design review. If the PM decides to proceed to the next phase with a less than satisfactory technical review, because of political or schedule considerations, the risks involved must be known and a contingency plan developed. Too often, however, the risks are much higher than perceived. It is essential to have a stable baseline since early mistakes become much harder and costlier (in time and money) to correct when they are discovered late in the development process. Proceeding before one is ready, usually increases the program risk.

**Conduct Periodic Inspections and Audits** - Periodic government inspections and audits can be useful when applied consistently. Despite the fact that auditors can be frequently wrong in their assessments, the audit is an essential tool of managements. Whether the audit is right or wrong, the very process of having an audit imposes discipline on the organization. Ideas on organization, design, and process are interchanged. Often the project or program improves because of the intensified attention [4]. Inspections generally use a checklist to determine the specification and design completeness. Audits are similar to inspections with the additional factor of determining requirements' traceability. These techniques can be valuable when applied to the interfaces. What better way to integrate the system than to ensure that the

hardware and software properly communicate with each other? In addition to inspections, the contractor should conduct walkthroughs as a standard business practice [7]. When conducting inspections and walkthroughs, it is important that the contractor establish clear entry and exit criteria.

**Use Statistics Generated by Contractor Internal Reviews** - The contractor must have a system in place that includes a method for assessing the quality and progress of the work. The Software Development Plan should identify the software development system and indicate how government visibility will be provided. This is accomplished by contractually requiring the developer to provide the assessment data to the program office. The purpose is not for the government to manage the contractor's work (that's the contractor's job) but to communicate program development status and product quality. The contractor should gather statistics from the internal walkthroughs and inspections and use this data to manage the software development. The contractor's mechanism for software development constitutes the process control system. A software process control system is analogous to a manufacturing process control.

**Integration Must be Visible on Master Schedule** - Integration brings the interfaces together. They occur at all levels: software to software, software to hardware and software to systems. Integration and integration testing must be planned and be highly visible to the government PM. The development of hardware and software must be approached as a maturing process strategy. Pieces of the system should be brought together in a planned, logical fashion. Some level of confidence in the hardware and software components must be established before proceeding with higher level integration. If this isn't done, problems that occur during

integration will be difficult to diagnose since they may be in either component--hardware or software. Integration of critical system components should be closely tracked throughout the development process.

## 9.5 REQUIREMENTS / PROTOTYPING

The PM can have a major impact on the success of the program during the requirements definition phase. Investment of time and resources in requirements definition has the biggest schedule and cost payoffs. Clear and unambiguous requirements, however, seem to be an elusive ingredient in any program. Since software development is an intellectual process that must be captured in some tangible form, how does one approach requirements definitions? Two tools available to aid the process are formal specification development tools and rapid prototyping.

### 9.5.1 Specification Development Tools

Specifications are generally written in prose and they suffer from significant interpretation and traceability problems. They are also very error prone. Formal specification development tools are designed to alleviate these problems. Because a formal specification language is much more specific than prose, it can be automated. This provides the use of computer assistance to check for errors, completeness, consistency, and traceability. Some commonly used formal specification development tools are:

**PSL/PSA:** Problem Statement Language/Problem Statement Analyzer. This tool was originally developed for data processing applications. It is widely used in other applications [8].

**RSL/REVS:** Requirements Statement Language/Requirements Engineering Validation

System. This is a real-time process control tool [9].

**SADT:** Structured Analysis and Design Technique. This tool analyzes the interconnecting structure of any large, complex systems. It is not restricted to software systems [10].

**SSA:** Structured System Analysis. The Gane and Sarson version is used in data processing applications that have database requirements. The DeMarco version is suited to data flow analysis of software systems [11,12].

**Gist:** Textural language developed at USC/Information Sciences Institute. This tool is useful for developing object-oriented specifications and designs. It is a refinement of specifications into source code [13].

### 9.5.2 Rapid Prototyping

Rapid prototyping may be the most powerful tool available to analyze and refine requirements and should be encouraged as a requirements' definition tool from the very

beginning. The PM should incorporate rapid prototyping as part of the contract.

A software rapid prototype is an analytical tool for refining software requirements. It is used during the requirements analysis phase with minimal constraints on choice of programming languages, documentation, and use of standards. In essence, it entails the almost unconstrained development of a software package with the primary goal of achieving quick results.

The objective is to compare these quick results with the initial system requirements. By allowing the user a quick look at the potential end product, they will be better able to answer the questions "Is this what you wanted?" or "Is this what you meant?" Documentation is minimal and it is not deliverable. Once a decision is made to deliver, it ceases to be a rapid prototype. This is analogous to the hardware requirements and design process of using engineering models, breadboards and brassboards. This is not to say that one would not use an approach of developing software using a "prototype" (as

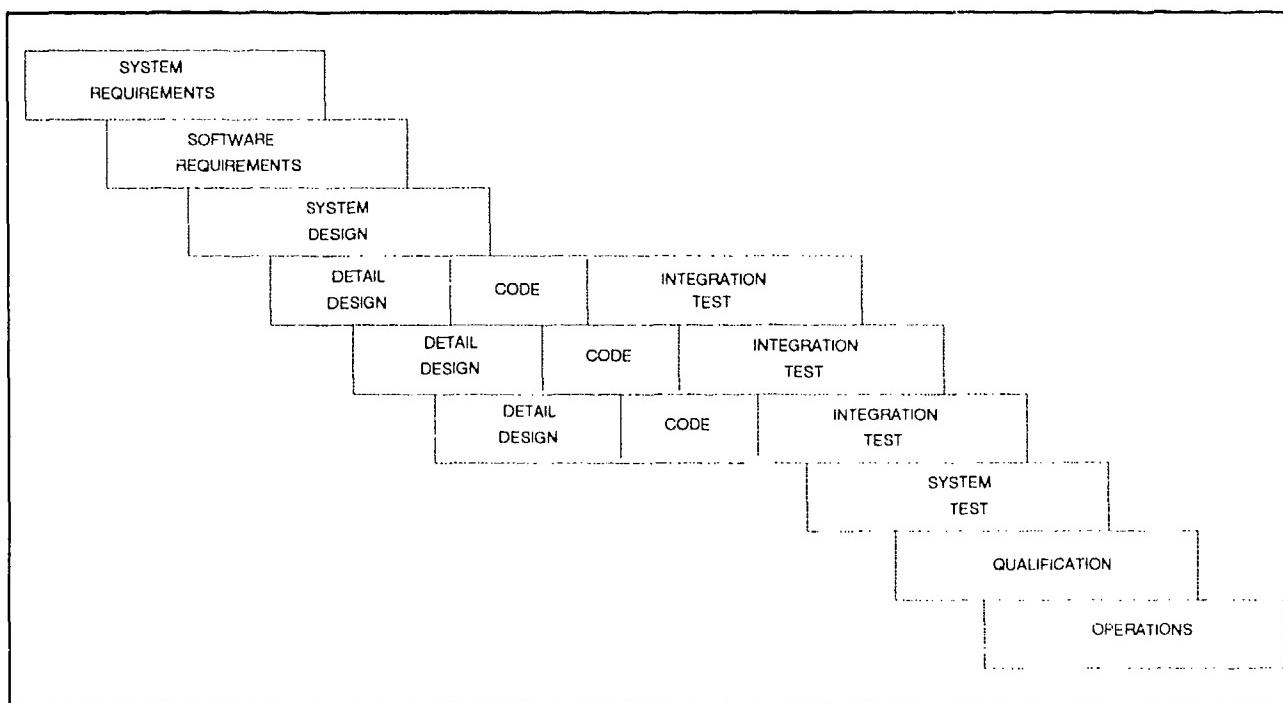


Fig. 9-2 Incremental Development

opposed to a "rapid prototype") for delivery and operation. This is yet another method called evolutionary development and it will be discussed later in this chapter. The value of a rapid prototype is in the capability to better communicate software requirements during the requirements analysis process. What better way to communicate with the users than to present them with an artifact that represents the system? Often the rapid prototype will represent the user interface (controls and displays) providing for both input and output. It may execute representative scenarios or operational profiles to determine the validity of the specifications. The prototype can be used throughout development, including Full Scale Development, to test out design concepts as well as develop a priori test results for future testing of the actual product. One must remember that a rapid prototype does not evolve into a deliverable software product. It should be discarded once it has been used to revise and refine the requirements.

### **9.5.3 Incremental and Evolutionary Development**

Incremental and evolutionary development are techniques for dealing with large, complex systems. Figure 9-2 illustrates incremental development. Design begins after the system and software requirements have been baselined.

The objective of incremental development is to produce a complex software product by building the total system capability in ever increasing increments. The second software delivery or increment will have more capability than the first delivery, the third more than the second and so on. As the saying goes "If you have to eat an elephant, eat him one bite at a time." Software development for Inter-Continental Ballistic Missiles (ICBMs), for example, is developed this way. The

Operational Flight Program (OFP) may be designed and developed in three increments.

This incremental approach must be pre-planned with the overall development strategy and test plan. The first system level capability to be demonstrated is the capability to fly from point "A" to point "B". This requires the appropriate planning for developing and integrating both hardware and software components in support of the scheduled events. The first increment would have the basic flight control, navigation, guidance, and task control functions. The next increment would add the system capability for multiple re-entry vehicle deployment. Again, meticulous planning would have preceded this activity to make sure that the appropriate hardware and software components are designed and developed on an integrated schedule. For the software, this second increment or "build" would have the same capabilities as the first increment plus the capability to deploy multiple re-entry vehicles during a flight. The final software increment may contain maintenance diagnostic capability and continuous navigation instrument calibration capability. One begins with a minimal program and then adds additional capability until the complete system is developed.

Evolutionary development is very similar to incremental development but it is more long term. While incremental development occurs during a single development phase, typically during FSD, evolutionary development can occur over several phases or be part of a pre-planned product improvement approach. Evolutionary development is the recommended approach for large Command, Control, Communications and Intelligence (C<sup>3</sup>I) systems. Rapid prototyping can be combined with this approach to help define the requirements. The evolutionary approach helps to

deal with "fuzzy" requirements where the general requirements are known but the details are lacking. For example, in a large C<sup>3</sup>I program the PM may know that he must design a system to communicate with multiple users, be able to react to rapidly changing threats, and be able to adapt to the environment in real-time. He may not, however, know the requirements of all the users, who may in turn not know themselves until they are able to work with the actual equipment in a scenario or simulated environment. The evolutionary development approach would develop an early model with flexibility and growth specifically as part of its design. This model would then be used under actual or simulated conditions to provide feedback to update the requirements. This approach could continue indefinitely.

<b>Plan</b>
- Cost and schedule
- Development and support
Select tangible inchstones
Review schedule after requirements are defined
Scrub requirements
Build rapid prototypes
Create/Update software size and cost estimates
Design within the system's constraints
Don't let hardware needlessly constrain software development
Establish CRWG and provide software support
Beware of government furnished products and subcontracts
Strongly consider incremental development for large systems
Create and manage schedule, memory, throughput margins
Understand the contractor's development process
Establish an internal control system
Use software metrics
Select resources and language

Fig. 9-3 Program Management Checklist

## 9.6 SUMMARY

The problems associated with managing software development can be overwhelming. But one must never forget that software development is manageable. This chapter has discussed some of the tools available to the program manager to help in planning a development strategy as well as assisting in the daily management of the program. The Program Management Checklist in Figure 9-3 serves as an additional reminder of the key elements that have been discussed throughout this text.

## 9.7 REFERENCES

1. Fairley, Richard E., *Software Engineering Concepts*, Tyngsboro, Mass., McGraw Hill Book Co., 1985.
2. McCabe, Thomas J. and G. Gordon Schulmeyer, "The Pareto Principle Applied to Software Quality Assurance," *Handbook of Software Quality Assurance*, Ed. G. Gordon Schulmeyer and James I. McManus, New York, NY, Van Norstrand Reinhold Company Inc., 1987.
3. Brooks, Frederick P., *The Mythical Man-Month: Essays on Software Engineering*, Addison Wesley, July 1978, Second Printing.
4. Fox, Joseph M., *Software and Its Development*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1982.
5. Software Engineering Institute, *A Method for Assessing the Software Engineering Capability of Contractors*, September 1987.
6. Deming, W. Edwards, *Out of the Crisis*, MIT Center for Advanced Engineering Study, Cambridge, MA, 1989.

7. Fagan, M., "Design and Code Inspections to Reduce Errors in Program Development," *IBM Journal*, Vol. 15, No.3, 1976.
8. Teichow, D. and Hershey, E., "PSL/PSA: A Computer Aided Technique for Structured Documentation and Analysis of Information Processing Systems," *Transactions Software Engineering*, Vol. SE-3, No. 1, January 1977.
9. Alford, M., "A Requirements Engineering Methodology of Real-Time Processing Requirements," *Transactions Software Engineering*, Vol. SE-3, No. 1, January 1977.
10. Ross, D., "Structured Analysis (SA): A Language for Communicating Ideas", *Transactions Software Engineering*, Vol. SE-3, No. 1, January 1977.
11. Gane, C. and T. Sarson, *Structured Systems Analysis: Tools and Techniques*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1972.
12. DeMarco, T., *Structured Analysis and System Specification*, Yourdon Press, NY, 1978.
13. Balzer, R., *Gist Final Report*, Information Sciences Institute, USC, February 1981.

# CHAPTER 10

---

## SOFTWARE CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT

### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

The dictionary defines configuration as the "relative disposition of the parts or elements of an item" and defines management as the "act or manner of handling, directing, or controlling" [1]. Configuration management (CM), then, can be generally defined as the act of controlling all elements of a particular item. When applied to weapon systems, CM is the system engineering management process that: creates the system components, identifies the functional and physical characteristics of those components, controls changes to those characteristics, and records the status of any changes implemented. It is the means through which the integrity and continuity of design, engineering, and cost tradeoff decisions made between technical performance, producibility, operability, and supportability are reported, communicated, and controlled [2].

**Software configuration management (SCM)** is formally defined as the process used to

identify the software configuration components of a system for the purpose of systematically controlling changes to the configuration and maintaining the integrity and traceability of that configuration throughout the system life cycle. This chapter explains the basic elements of SCM and shows how the application of these elements to the software development cycle facilitates the transformation of software into a visible and manageable entity [3]. Figure 10-1 illustrates the interrelationship of the four functions of SCM: identification, control, status accounting, and audits [4].

The developer (a contractor or another government agency) and the government procuring agency both apply CM procedures to a specific development program. This chapter concentrates on CM practices as described in DOD-STD-480A, *Configuration Control, Engineering Changes, Deviations, and Waivers*, MIL-STD-483A, *Configuration*

*Management Practices for Systems, Equipment, Munitions, and Computer Resources and DOD-STD-2167A, Defense System Software Development.*

## 10.2 CONFIGURATION IDENTIFICATION

Configuration identification determines how to divide the software system for ease in managing and controlling change. A system comprises a physical and a functional con-

Software configuration identification means specifying and identifying all system software components throughout its life cycle, from the development of specifications to the generation of actual code [4]. The definition of Computer Software Configuration Items (CSCIs), along with their functional and physical characteristics, normally occurs during the Demonstration and Validation (D/V) phase of the acquisition life cycle and prior to the System Design Review (SDR). MIL-STD-483A, Appendix XVII, provides

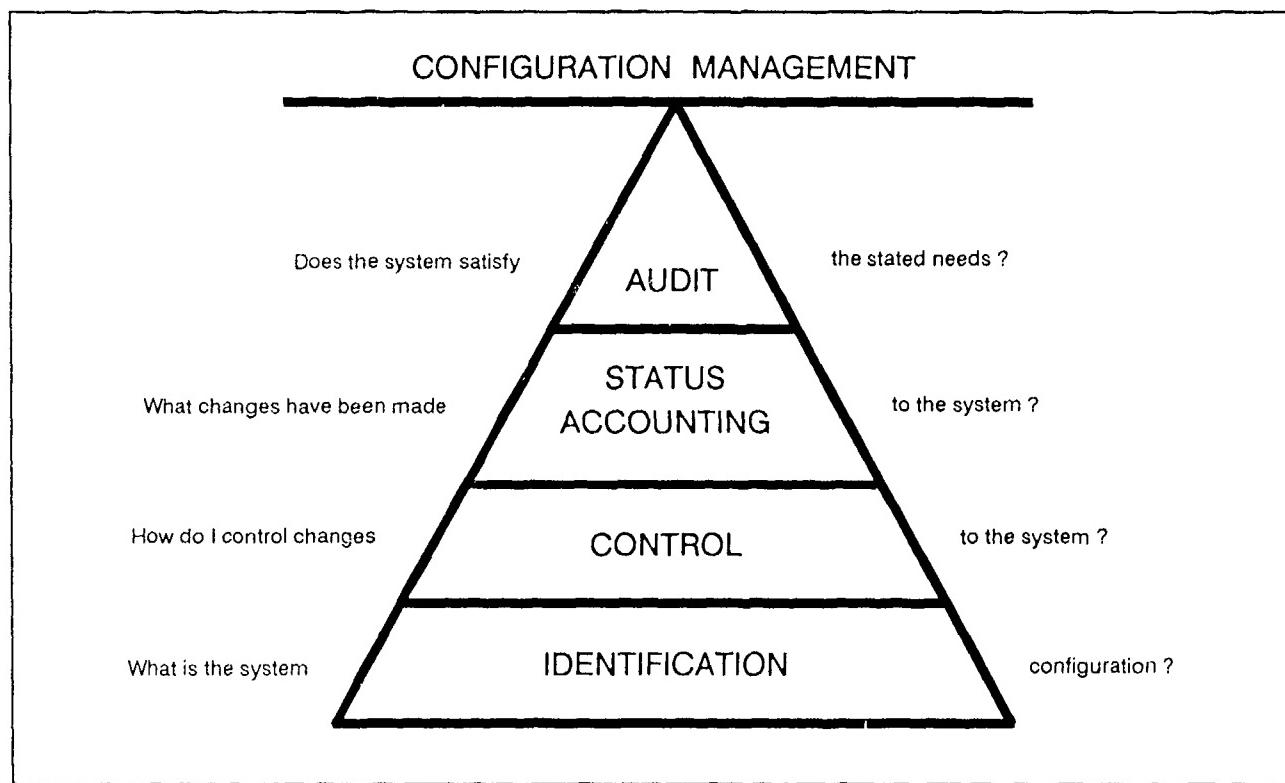


Fig. 10-1 Configuration Management Functions

figuration. **Physical Configuration** refers to the detailed design or physical attributes and it is normally described by hardware drawings and software code listings. **Functional Configuration** refers to the functions a system or unit performs and it is primarily established by hardware and software requirements' documents [3]. The functional description of software is documented in interface specifications, product description, test procedure and detailed design specifications.

the following guidance for selecting configuration items (CIs):

- Select CIs based on functional and performance parameters which must be controlled to satisfy an overall end use function (e.g., defensive avionics system software);
- Select CIs which require an optimum level of government control during acquisition (e.g., code verification software);

- (c) Select CIs based on the need to control their inherent characteristics or to control their interface with other CIs (e.g., controls and displays software);
- (d) When selecting CIs, evaluate other factors such as schedule, the engineering release system, financial impact, and new, modified, or existing design parameters.

The process of configuration identification provides a way to isolate system components to control their development. There are four steps to software configuration identification. First, the software system is broken down into a number of known manageable parts or CSCIs. Second, these CSCIs are uniquely named. Third, as these parts change with time, the various versions that appear are uniquely identified. Fourth a change control process is instituted to ensure knowledge and control of all changes that occur throughout the lifecycle of the program. The first step is closely associated with the processes of specification, analysis, and design. Steps two and three require rigorous enforcement of step four, standards and procedures. Figure 10-2 represents a generic breakdown of a software system into various CSCIs, computer software components (CSCs), and computer software units (CSUs). The contractor will normally propose a list of CSCIs based on the Request For Proposal (RFP) Work Breakdown Structure (WBS), the design requirements, management structure, and available resources. This structure of CSCIs should be reflected in the contractor's Software Development Plan (SDP) and Configuration Management Plan (CMP). The contractor's CM methodology is documented in the CMP. The CMP and SDP are normally deliverables on software programs. They are presented for approval to the government in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Data Requirements List (CDRL).

Care must be taken when selecting the number of configuration items. Too many configuration items may increase the management and administrative efforts required to adequately track and control the status of the CSCIs. This additional effort may delay the schedule and increase the cost of the software development. On the other hand, too few CSCIs may minimize the program office's visibility into the software development process, tend to reduce control of the software design and possibly lead to operational deficiencies.

While the process of CI decomposition allows for the management of small units, one should remember that software, like hardware, is a sum of its parts and must be managed from a system approach. CM is the primary responsibility of the program office. Unfortunately, in many program offices the CM function becomes a low priority task managed by a caretaker group and is not considered an integral participant in the daily management of the program. Because of this, the Program Manager (PM), as well as other functional managers, may inadvertently affect the configuration of the system in their routine interfaces with the developer. There should be a strong relationship between the CM and other functional areas in the program office.

### 10.3 CONFIGURATION CONTROL

Once the system configuration is established, the next step is to establish a method to manage and control changes. Unlike hardware, software is an intangible product difficult to "see" and more difficult to manage. Software can still be properly managed, however, by applying configuration control methods to the development process and on the products of that process. Edward Bersoff defines software configuration control as "...the orchestration of the processes by which

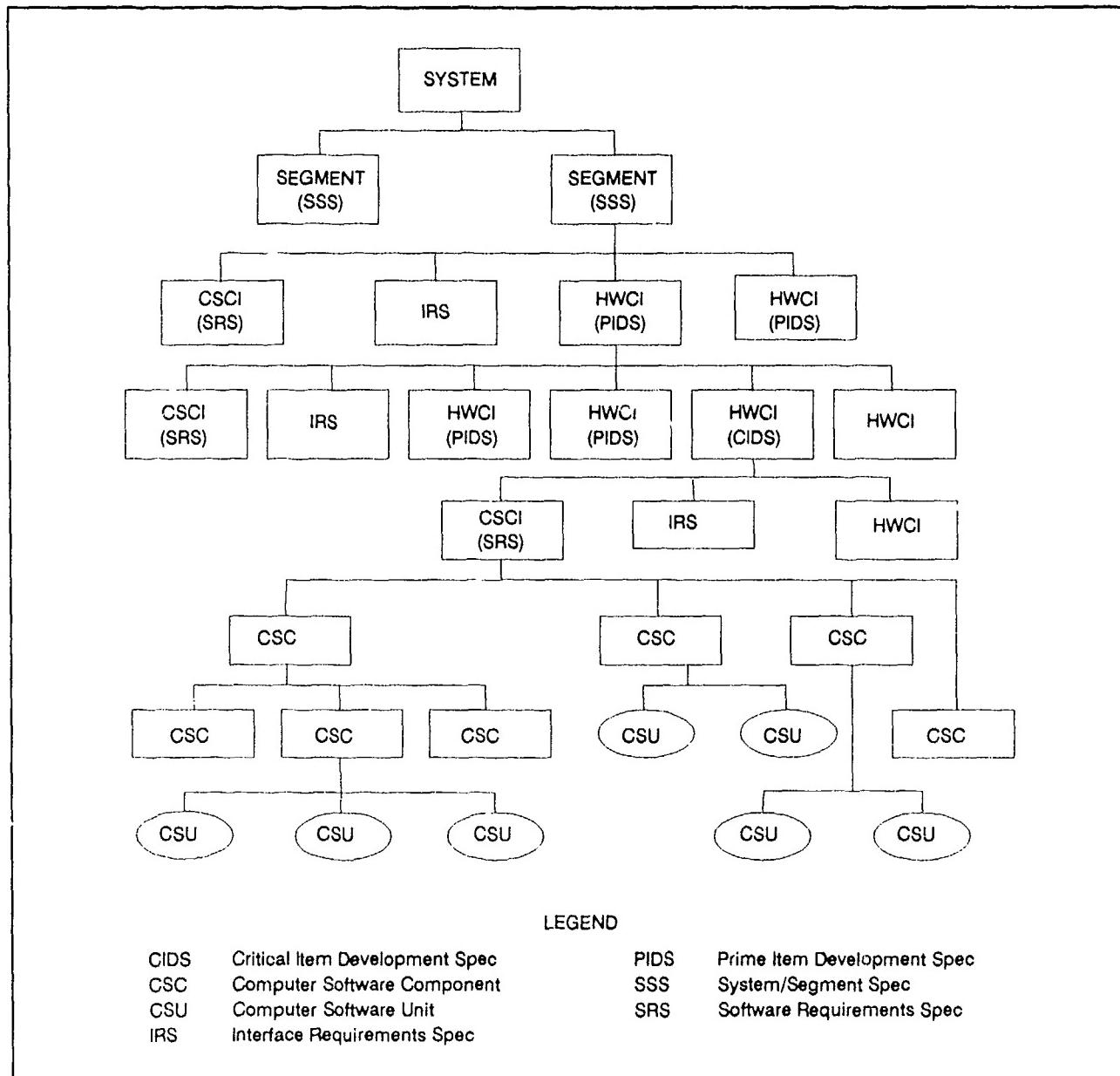


Fig. 10-2 Breakdown of Software System

the software portion of a system can achieve and maintain visibility throughout its journey through the life cycle. It provides the tools (i.e., documentation, procedures, and an organizational body) to control the system implementation as well as changes to it" [4].

The configuration and change control process includes: interface control, baseline management, Configuration Control Boards (CCBs), Software Configuration Review Boards (SCRB), Software Problem Reporting (SPR),

software Engineering Change Proposals (ECPs), test asset control, test software control, physical test item control, integration control, and version control.

To understand the configuration control process, one has to understand the differences between Class I and Class II changes. Class I changes effect form, fit, or function; although other factors, such as cost or schedule, can cause a Class I change. All Class I changes must be submitted to the Government CCB

for approval. All other changes are Class II changes. Class II changes do not change the scope of requirements, do not effect cost, or change the contracted schedule. Examples of Class II changes are editorial changes in documentation or minor changes which don't affect the established baselines or the functional allocation of the CSCI.

For government approved Class I, the government must negotiate with the contractor before the change can be implemented. A contractor may proceed to implement a proposed Class I change before government approval, but he proceeds at his own risk.

Class II changes only require government concurrence on the classification before the contractor may proceed with a change. This can be accomplished by government plant representatives. The PM should ensure that the contractor supplies the program office with copies of all Class I and Class II Draft changes as well as any Class II changes that have been approved by local authorities. MIL-STD-483A, Appendix XIV discusses software Class I and II changes.

### 10.3.1 Interface Control

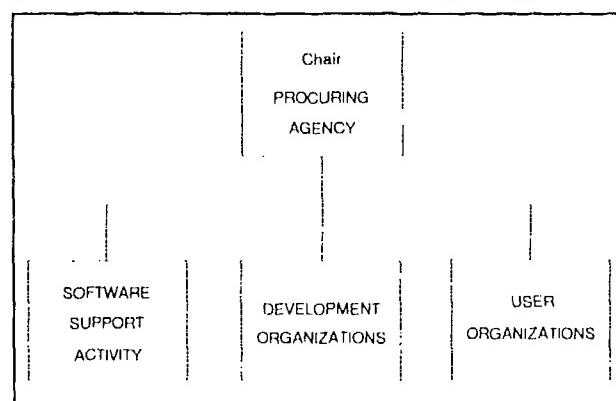
An interface is the functional or physical characteristics which serve as a common boundary between two or more items. In system development, these boundaries are found between hardware and software, hardware and hardware, operational communication standards and the system, and software and software configuration items. The interfaces are defined by electro-mechanical characteristics, reliability and maintainability requirements and software format, timing, and programming language's requirements.

The program office controls all external interfaces that effect the system under develop-

ment through groups such a CCB, an Interface Control Working Group (ICWG), a Test Planning Working Group, and a Computer Resources Working Group (CRWG). The contractor controls all internal interfaces to the program under development through the contractor's own configuration control process and change management process.

The government ICWG concerns itself with issues external to the product such as inter-operability, logistics, and operational issues. The ICWG is usually chaired by the procuring agency's engineering representative and is comprised of representatives from the development organizations, user organizations, and software support activities as shown in Figure 10-3. The ICWG, in coordination with the CRWG, define and control current and proposed software and hardware interfaces, obtain and assess quantitative interface data, and investigate system and subsystem inter-operability requirements.

During Full Scale Development (FSD) many programs delegate the responsibility for product interface control to the development contractor. As the system matures and proceeds toward test and delivery, the govern-



**Fig. 10-3 Interface Control Working Group**

ment gradually assumes more of this responsibility. The contractor's ICWG is usually chaired by an individual from the engineering organization. Associate contractors are mem-

bers and the responsible DOD agency may be an observer. The contractor's ICWG documents agreements on CSCI interfaces and hardware configuration item (HWCI) interfaces involving more than one contractor. The contractor's ICWG should review all engineering and interface changes before submitting them to the Program Office [5].

### 10.3.2 Baseline Management

Baseline management is the process of managing the derivation of the contractual requirements into implementable functions and the integration of those functions into a system that demonstrates compliance with these requirements.

Within each of the development phases, specific reviews (SRR, SDR, PDR, CDR) have been established to examine the contractor's compliance with the requirements of the contract and his progress toward delivery of a system. This is accomplished through documentation such as specifications, design documentation, management reports, and test reports. At the completion of each review these documents are approved

and a contractor's baseline is incremented to indicate government approval of the contractor's design and progress at that particular stage. Documented deficiencies will indicate the contractor's progress toward meeting the requirements' baseline. Traditionally there have been three baselines, the **functional, allocated, and product baselines**. The provisions of most contracts require that, as baselines change, the system integrity be maintained. Each baseline indicates a state of design that becomes progressively more restrictive and finally represents the actual hardware and software developed.

A **functional baseline** is typically established at the completion of the System Design Review (SDR) and approval of the Type A system specification. Formal configuration control for the system is initiated once the system specification has been approved. The **allocated baseline** for the system is established once the allocated baseline for each CI is determined and the Software Requirements Specification (SRS) and Interface Requirements Specifications (IRS) for each configuration item have been approved. For hardware, this normally occurs at the Prelimi-

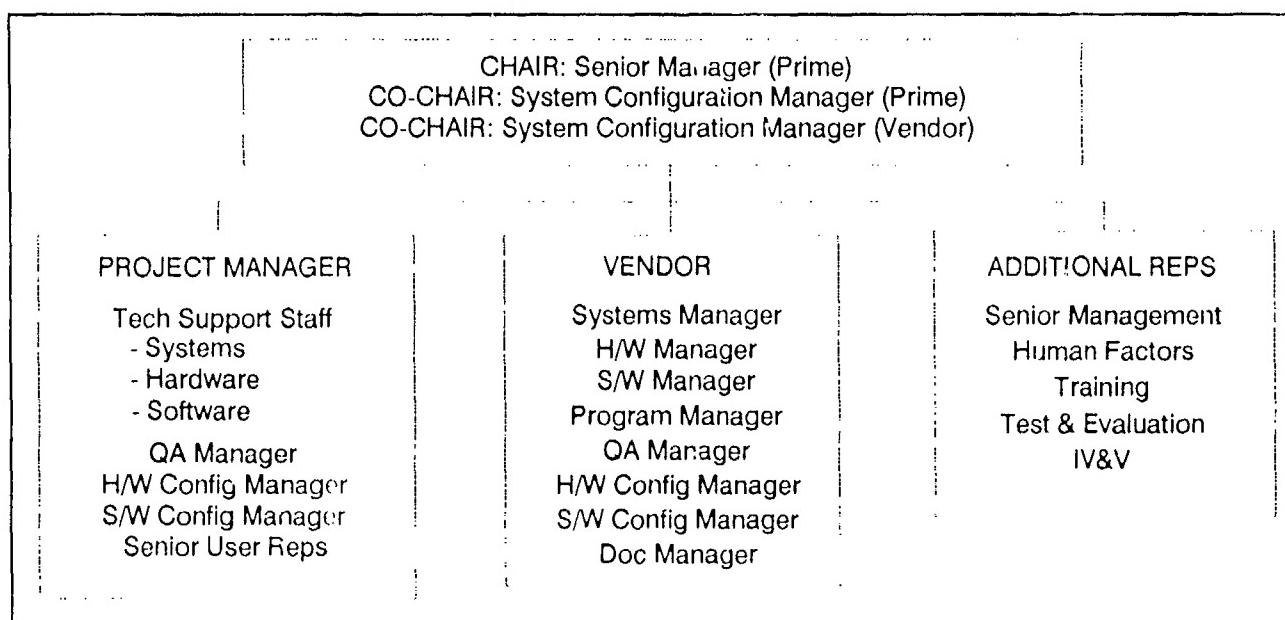


Fig. 10-4 Contractor CCB

nary Design Review (PDR). For software, the allocated baseline is normally established at the completion of the Software Specification Review (SSR) but no later than the CDR. The **product baseline** is typically established at the completion of the Physical Configuration Audit (PCA) after the Type C specifications are approved. When programmatic issues preclude the PM from formally establishing a baseline, alternatives include an **informal or developmental baseline** agreement between the contractor and program office.

Informal baselines imply a sharing of configuration control responsibility between the contractor and the program office. It allows the contractor a large degree of latitude in

control changes to the system. Figures 10-4 and 10-5 illustrate typical membership of government and contractor CCBs. The composition of both CCBs are very similar; however, the responsibility of the government CCB is at the system level. The contractor has additional configuration control responsibilities at lower hierarchical levels for both software and hardware as depicted in Figure 10-6 [3].

#### 10.3.4 Software Configuration Review Board

A Software Configuration Review Board (SCRB) reviews and evaluates all proposed changes to the software baselines and determines the processing and disposition of

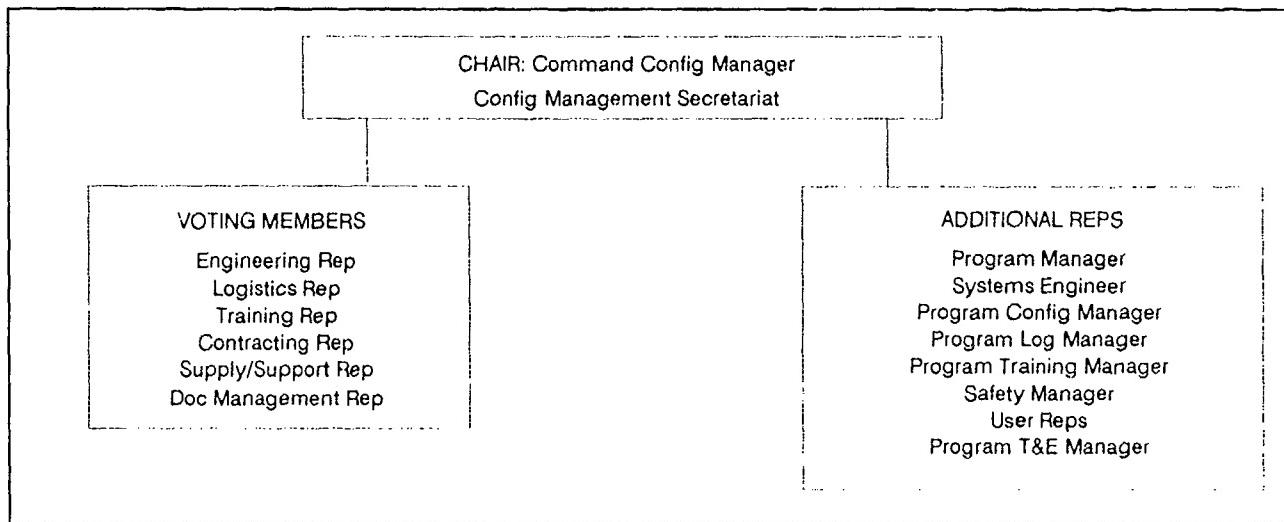


Fig. 10-5 Government CCB

processing changes to the baseline in pursuit of the correct design and relieves the government of the formal structured change control process. However, the contractor proceeds on risk and is not encouraged to formalize the changes it has initiated.

#### 10.3.3 Configuration Control Board

The Configuration Control Board is the organizational body within the development organization responsible for formal processing of changes to established baselines. The function of the CCB is to approve, monitor, and

software problem reports. The SCRB serves as a filter for the CCB on software related matters. Software problem reports, incident reports, change requests, and change proposals are first submitted to the SCRB for review and evaluation. The SCRB determines if the pending software changes should be disapproved or forwarded to the CCB for formal approval as baseline changes. Prior to its decision, the SCRB would have reviewed a number of proposed software changes, prioritized their urgency, and determined if the changes should be made singly or in compatible groupings or block changes.

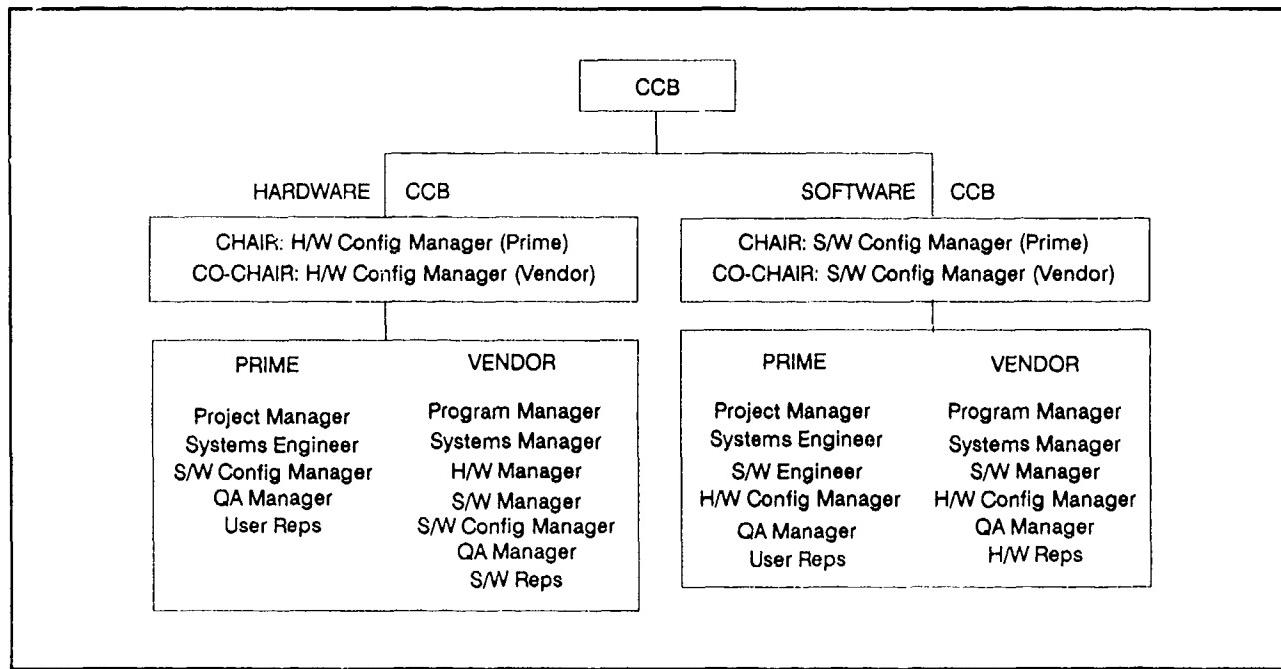


Fig. 10-6 Configuration Control Board

As with the Configuration Control Board, the SCRB is also used by both the government and the contractor. Figure 10-7 illustrates the typical composition of these two SCRBs.

In the government, the SCRB normally begins to function as the government assumes management responsibility of the baselines and continues during the production/support phases of the acquisition cycle of a weapon system. That is one of the reasons for including the Software Support Activity as part of its membership. During the transition to organic support, the program manager may choose to have the contractor as a non-voting member of the SCRB. As a minimum, the SCRB should be conducted annually in conjunction with planned upgrades (or releases) of the software system. However, the SCRB may be convened at any time for major (critical) deficiencies discovered in the software.

The software developer typically employs an internal SCRB during development. Since the SCRB is a software board, its membership is made up of mostly software oriented representatives. The software manager chairs the

board and has final approval authority. The SCRB should meet routinely to act on all submitted software problem reports (SPRs). The actions of the SCRB may require the contractor to submit ECPs and other contract modifying requests in order to implement a solution to a problem. Normally if a change does not effect the baseline, it is implemented on approval by the contractors CCB. Any change that affects a program baseline must be transmitted to the contractors CCB for disposition [6]. Disposition may take the form

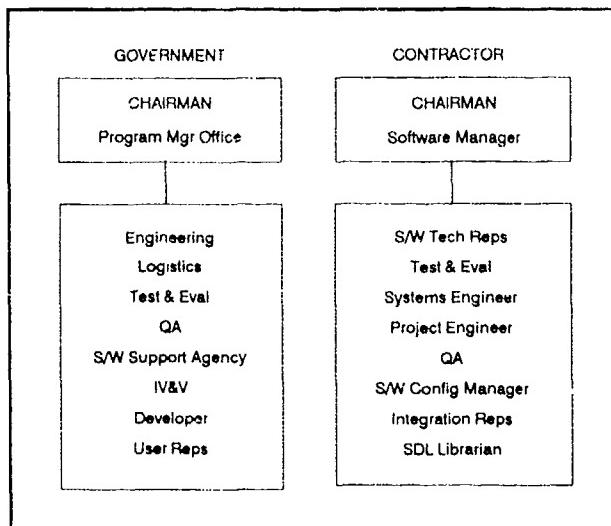


Fig. 10-7 Software Configuration Review

of internal direction to proceed because the change does not impact the design baseline or a transmittal to the Government Program Office for formal government CCB and follow-on contracting action.

The Software Development Library (SDL) librarian is a key member of the developer's SCRB and acts as the board recorder. Since the SCRB is administered and supported through the SDL, the SDL librarian is responsible for tracking the status of the Software Problem Reports (SPRs), forwarding the recommended SPRs to the contractor's CCB for disposition, incorporating the implemented changes in the SDL, and maintaining up-to-date records of these reports.

### **10.3.5 Configuration Control Process**

The configuration control process (Figure 10-8) is a very time consuming and active process. It is the heart of the configuration control function. Both the government and the developer follow a similar internal change control process which results in software ECPs forwarded to the government CCB for evaluation and approval.

The configuration control process begins with the initialization of a change to an established baseline (e.g., allocated, functional, program). These changes may be initiated by government direction, ICWG activity, or contractor/subcontractor activity. If the change is initiated by the government, the developer's engineering activity, in coordination with its ICWG, will analyze the technical, cost, and schedule impacts of the proposed change. Once a change has been reviewed and evaluated, the developer will categorize it as either Class I or II. All software related issues will be forwarded to the SCRB for review, evaluation, and disposition. The contractor is asked to cost this change and participates in a

contract modification. If the contractor initiates the change request, the process is similar. The government CCB dispositions the change request and formally notifies the contractor by PCO letter. If it's an approved Class I change, the contractor and the government negotiate the cost and schedule impact.

Class I changes follow a more formal route through the CCB. The developer will submit all proposed Class I changes to its CCB for review and disposition. The CCB will determine if the change should be formally submitted to the government. If they decide not to, they may choose to follow an informal route by submitting preliminary documentation consisting of an Advanced Change/Study Notice, an Engineering Change Request, or a preliminary ECP. If this informal documentation is approved, the government will notify the developer to submit formal documentation. The formal documentation may consist of an ECP, a Specification Change Notice with specification page changes, a Request for Deviation/Waiver, an Interface Revision Notice, and supporting cost data. Once approved/disapproved, the program office will notify the contractor and both will monitor the implementation status.

When Class II changes are submitted to the government, the government's Defense Plant Representative Office (DPRO) may approve the classification and sign off on the change. Once the change is approved, the contractor may implement and monitor the status of the change. Class II changes which do not receive government concurrence may be submitted as Class I changes.

## **10.4 CONFIGURATION STATUS ACCOUNTING**

Configuration status accounting is the management information system that provides

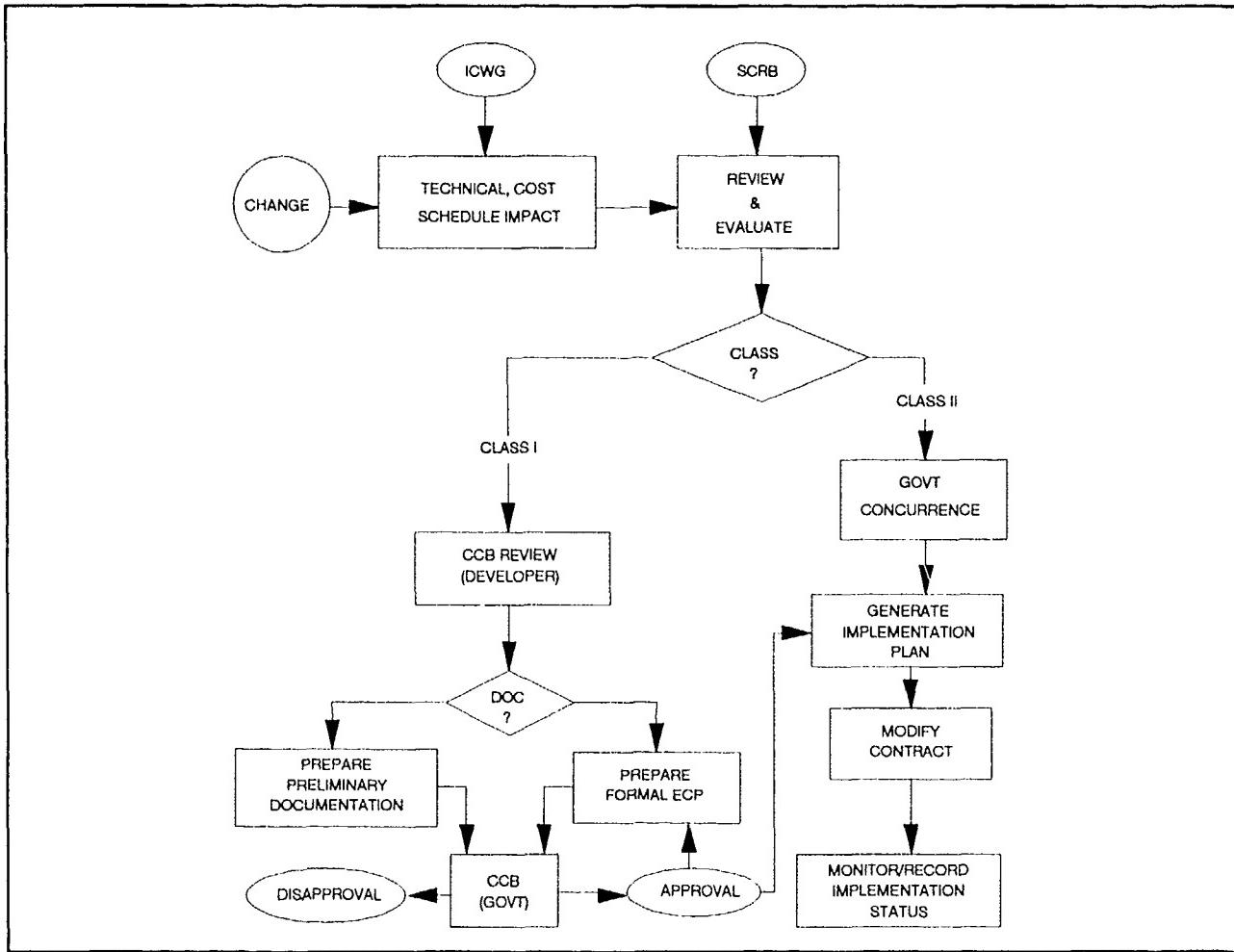


Fig. 10-8 Change Control Process

traceability of changes to configuration baselines and facilitates the effective implementation of changes. It consists of reports and records documenting CSCI change actions. The basic documentation includes the Configuration Identification Index and Status Accounting Report. DOD-STD-2167A provides specific guidance for the status accounting of software. MIL-STD-482A standardizes data elements with regard to format, frequency, and record keeping [2].

#### 10.4.1 Software Development Library

The contractor's Software Development Library (SDL) is defined in DOD-STD-2167A as a controlled collection of software, documentation, and associated tools and procedures used to facilitate the orderly develop-

ment and subsequent support of software. An SDL provides storage of, and controlled access to, software and documentation in human-readable form, machine-readable form, or both. It also ensures compliance with process procedures. It serves as the contractor's single point of configuration control during all phases of a contract. The SDL maintains established project baselines, and monitors and controls the project development configuration baselines and data products. Software products consist of documentation and listings, source code, executable (machine) code, and status records. The SDL responsibilities consist of:

- (a) Establishing technical configuration control and monitoring the quality of software products;

- (b) Maintaining organizational facilities for baselining and controlling the content of software products;
- (c) Establishing reporting procedures for resolving software design or implementation issues and documenting the contents of the library's data products [5].
- (d) Serving as the repository for test software and maintaining configuration control of software testing.

The SDL librarian stores the completed software products. This includes listings of tested functions, development folders associated with the function, and functional test results. He or she also maintains current listings and copies of products under development, updates them as required, tracks the functions to produce a historical development record, and controls the distribution of copies to appropriate personnel. The librarian ensures compliance with contractual design guidelines and maintains completed software development folders. As recorder for the SCRB, the SDL librarian schedules and coordinates the SCRB meetings and reviews the SPRs to insure that these reports are ready for discussion at the SCRB. The librarian tracks, monitors, and records the status of action items assigned to the SPRs, and prepares and distributes the minutes of SCRB meetings.

#### **10.4.2 Software Development Folder**

A Software Development Folder (SDF) is defined in DOD-STD-2167A as a repository for a collection of material pertinent to the development configuration. The contents of the SDF typically include (either directly or by reference) design considerations and constraints, design documentation and data, schedules and status information, test requirements, test cases, test procedures, and

test results. The contractor documents the development of each CSU, CSC, and CSCI in SDFs. The SDFs constitute the first line of configuration management. The Configuration Manager is responsible for their content and completeness although this responsibility is typically delegated to the Lead Programmer or the project leader of a particular software effort. The role of CM is to ensure that the SDFs are complete before they are formally accepted into the SDL and baselined. This step is crucial. Many lower level functions are tested and validated through the use of the SDFs. The SDFs are maintained for the duration of the contract and will be made available for government review upon request.

### **10.5 CONFIGURATION AUDITS**

The fourth function of government configuration management is to perform a set of configuration audits to verify that the selected configuration items conform to the specifications and related technical data. There are two types of audits conducted: a Functional Configuration Audit (FCA) and a Physical Configuration Audit (PCA). The details of these audits are described in MIL-STD-1521B, *Technical Reviews and Audits for Systems, Equipments, and Computer Software*.

The software FCA is a formal examination of the functional characteristics of a CSCI prior to acceptance to verify that the CSCI has achieved the performance specified in its Software Requirements Specification (SRS) and Interface Requirements Specification (IRS). Other technical documentation such as the Software Test Plan (STP), the Software Test Descriptions (STD), the Software Test Reports (STR), and minutes of the design reviews are evaluated for completeness. The FCA validates the development of a CSCI has been satisfactorily completed and that the CSCI performs as defined in the contract.

The PCA is a formal examination of the "as-built" version of the CSCI as described in the Software Product Specification (SPS). The source code for each CSCI is compared with the associated documentation (SRS, IRS, software design documents, Interface Design Documents, and Version Description Documents) for accuracy and completeness. The PCA establishes the product baseline for each CSCI and may occur prior to hardware and software system integration and testing. However, system level PCAs are often delayed until after system integration and testing is completed. The PCA also verifies that the tested object code can be recreated or compiled from the baselined source code.

A word of caution should be noted in performing FCA/PCAs. In a highly integrated hardware and software effort, it is normally impossible to completely prove compliance with the requirements without integrating the two entities and validating their combined performance at the system level. So it may not make sense to perform a FCA/PCA on a software CSCI prior to the completion of all the DT&E testing. This approach forces a tremendous load on the government and contractor reviewers but may be the only way to accurately demonstrate compliance with all the requirements and to document all the discrepancies remaining before the government will accept the tested article.

## 10.7 SUMMARY

Configuration management is essential to the development of mission critical computer resources. It provides needed program visibility and allows for the control of the software requirements, design, and final product in an orderly and logical manner. It also provides an audit trail and defines the limits imposed on and by the contractor during the development of a software

product. Configuration management is especially important for software since the physical and functional characteristics of software cannot be assessed by visual inspection like hardware [6]. Embracing the configuration management discipline means making a continuous, firm commitment to tracking status of information that is constantly changing [7]. Without the structure of a sound software configuration management program, the development of complex software systems would be nearly impossible. Sound configuration management is extremely important for life cycle support of software.

## 10.8 REFERENCES

1. *College Dictionary*, Random House Inc., New York, NY, 1968.
2. "Configuration Management," *System Engineering Management Guide*, Defense Systems Management College, Ft. Belvoir, VA, October 1986.
3. DOD Directive 5010.19, *Configuration Management*, 1 May 1979.
4. Bersoff, Edward H., *Software Configuration Management, An Investment in Product Integrity*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1980.
5. Buckle, J. K., *Software Configuration Management*, McMillan Press, Ltd., 1982.
6. Ferens, Daniel V. *Mission Critical Computer Software Support Management*, Air Force Institute of Technology, School of Systems and Logistics, Wright-Patterson AFB, OH, First Edition, May 1987.
7. Evans, Michael W., *Software Quality Assurance and Management*, John Wiley and Sons, 1987.

# CHAPTER 11

---

## INDEPENDENT VERIFICATION AND VALIDATION

### 11.1 BACKGROUND

Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V) of software was born during the early days of the space and missile programs. Both NASA and the military realized that software developed for spacecraft and missiles had to perform correctly the first time. For example, if the software did not perform as required during the launch phase of a missile, there were no second chances. Software failures usually meant the loss of the mission, the launch vehicle, and, if the mission was manned, the personnel on board.

Because of the importance and criticality of spacecraft software, money and time were set aside for an independent organization or contractor, other than the software developer, to perform several functions:

(a) Independently test the performance of the developed software;

- (b) Ascertain that the developed software satisfied all of the system level requirements;
- (c) Independently develop a separate software package for those functions deemed to be critical to the success of the mission.

This type of IV&V effort did not come cheap! A full blown IV&V effort could sometimes exceed 50 percent of the software development cost [1]. The criticality of the missions, however, justified these kinds of expenditures. The same was not true when the IV&V philosophy was introduced into non-missile weapon system programs. Many programs failed to tailor the IV&V approach of the space and missile programs to the requirements of their own programs. Much of the software developed for aircraft, tanks, and ships could be classified as non-critical. This meant that many software failures had no im-

pact on critical subsystems and had no effect on crew safety. For example, a failure in a built-in-test (BIT) or other diagnostic on-line subsystem, usually did not have any bearing on the success or safety of a particular mission. Likewise, failure in a piece of automatic test equipment (ATE) or in a data reduction program was not catastrophic. Unfortunately, large amounts of program funds were needlessly spent in the IV&V of non-critical or secondary software. This has resulted in two schools of thought. One school feels that software IV&V is an unnecessary expense for most weapon systems while the other school feels that IV&V should be performed on all software developments. Neither is entirely true! Software IV&V is indeed an important aspect of developing quality software, but it has to be focused on those areas that are critical to the success or safety of a mission.

Although IV&V is an effective management tool in developing quality software, caution must be taken in placing too much emphasis on it. IV&V never alleviates the prime contractor's responsibility for mission success, system safety, or other quality assurance practices. To be an effective quality as-

surance tool, IV&V must complement and reinforce the contractor's software engineering process, configuration management, and qualification test functions [1].

Before discussing the scope and usefulness of an IV&V effort, it will be useful to define some terms.

## 11.2 VERIFICATION

Verification is Computer Software Configuration Item (CSCI) oriented. As illustrated in Figure 11-1, it is the iterative process of determining whether the product of selected steps of the CSCI development process fulfills the requirements levied by previous steps. Specific task areas that make up the CSCI verification process include:

- (a) Systems engineering analytical activities carried out to ensure that the Software Requirements Specification (SRS) reflects the requirements allocated from the System Specification;
- (b) Design evaluation activities carried out to ensure that the CSCI design continues to

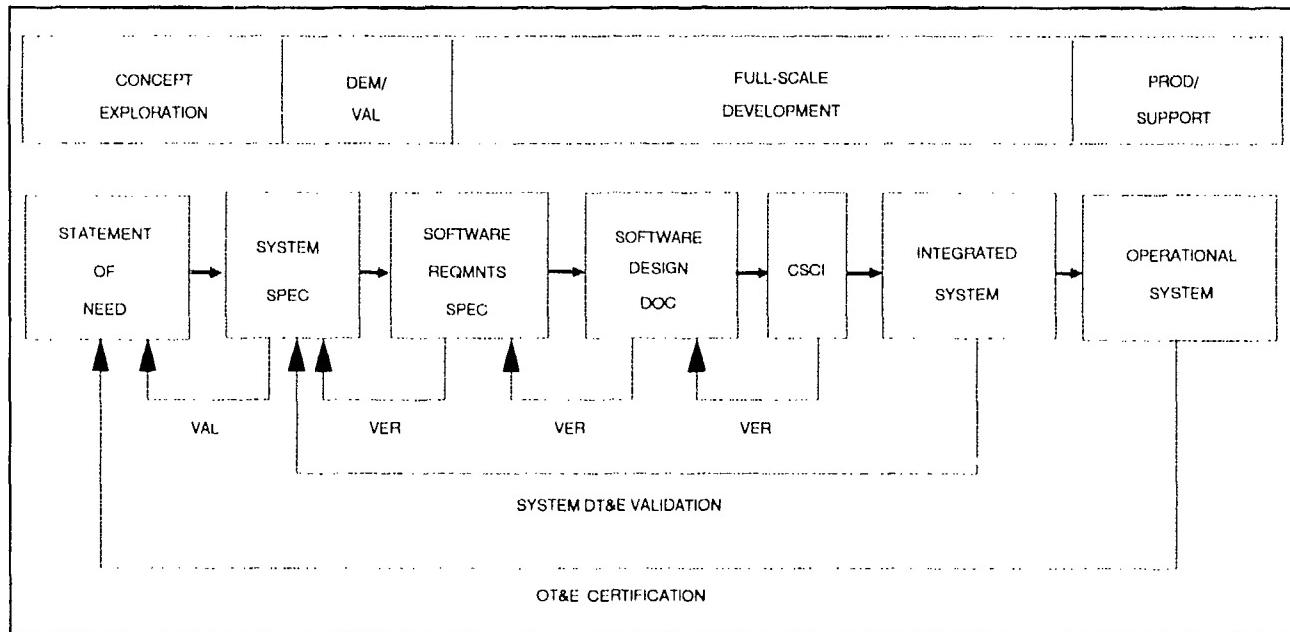


Fig. 11-1 Verification/Validation/Certification

meet the requirements of the SRS as the design proceeds to greater levels of detail (design verification);

- (c) Informal testing of the CSCI and its components carried out by the developer to assist in development, provide visibility of progress, and prepare for formal testing (computer program verification);
- (d) Formal testing of the CSCI (Formal Qualification Test [FQT]) carried out by the developer in accordance with government approved test plans and procedures to verify that the CSCI fulfills the requirements of the SRS and to provide the basis for CSCI acceptance by the government [1].

### **11.3 VALIDATION**

Validation is system oriented. It comprises those evaluation, integration, and test activities carried out at the system level to ensure that the system that is finally developed satisfies the requirements of the System Specification. Specific validation tasks include:

- (a) Systems engineering activities carried out to ensure that the requirements in the system specification accurately respond to the operational needs called for in the Statement of Need (SON);
- (b) CSCI integration activities carried out to assemble and check out previously qualified CSCIs as a fully functioning system;
- (c) The software aspects of system validation carried out during System Developmental Test & Evaluation (DT&E) and Operational Test and Evaluation (OT&E) to demonstrate that the completed system meets the requirements called for in the system specification (validating the system).

### **11.4 CERTIFICATION**

Certification refers to the using command's agreement, at the conclusion of OT&E, that the acquired system satisfies its intended operational mission. During OT&E the system undergoes test and evaluation aimed at assuring operational effectiveness and suitability under operational conditions [2].

### **11.5 THE IV&V PROCESS**

AFSC/AFLCP 800-5, *Software Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V), Draft* [2] is an excellent source of information on how to:

- (a) Determine the need for IV&V
- (b) Establish the scope of IV&V
- (c) Define the IV&V tasks
- (d) Estimate software IV&V cost
- (e) Select IV&V agent.

Since this document already addresses these issues, this section will briefly summarize the contents of AFSC/AFLCP 800-5.

#### **11.5.1 Determining the Need for IV&V**

Before establishing a software IV&V program it is necessary to determine whether the system being considered warrants an IV&V effort. This determination should be made during the system Demonstration/Validation phase by identifying and examining software requirements. The identification and examination of requirements should be a by-product of the System/Segment Specification (SSS) and the preliminary Software Requirements Specification (SRS). The requirements within each CSCI should be assessed to

determine if an undetected error has the potential for causing death or personnel injury, mission failure, or catastrophic equipment loss. A determination should be made to see if any of the software development effort is to be considered medium to high risk due to technical reasons (i.e., complexity, state-of-the-art, system integration, maturity of tools). The CSCIs that meet any of these criteria should be supplemented with an IV&V effort. In addition, the software safety analysis performed as specified in MIL-STD-882 may also determine the need for IV&V.

### 11.5.2 Establishing the Scope of IV&V

The IV&V effort should be tailored so that it is commensurate with the level of criticality of the software being developed. After determining the need for IV&V, its scope can be established by performing a criticality analysis of the software. This analysis should be done at the CSCI level using the SRS and Interface Requirements Specification (IRS). In many cases, this level of detail is not always available prior to the FSD contract. In these cases, the analysis can be performed at the SSS level.

of effort type contract until the effort can be better defined.

Regardless of whether one uses the SSS or SRS, the test for criticality of software requirements is performed using the following six-step procedure (See AFSC/AFLCP 800-5 for detailed information):

- (a) List the software requirements;
- (b) Identify the potential impact of undetected software errors or faults on the software requirements;
- (c) Estimate the probability of occurrence for each error;
- (d) Calculate the criticality value of the requirements as shown in Table 11-1 (See ASFC/AFLCP 800-5 for details);
- (e) Calculate the overall criticality value for the system or for each CSCI.
- (f) Select the appropriate level of IV&V based on system's/CSCI's criticality value.

PROBABILITY OF OCCURENCE	IMPACT CATEGORIES			
	CATASTROPHIC	CRITICAL	MARGINAL	NEGLIGIBLE
Frequent	12	9	6	3
Probable	8	6	4	2
Improbable	4	3	2	1
Impossible	0	0	0	0

Table 11-1 Requirement Criticality Values

Unfortunately, this may lead to an overall IV&V effort that is too detailed for some CSCIs or not detailed enough for others. The program manager can partially deal with this problem by placing the IV&V agent on a level

### 11.5.3 Defining the IV&V Tasks

Once the criticality values are calculated the appropriate level of IV&V can be selected as shown below:

Criticality Value	Appropriate IV&V Level
6 -12	I
3 - 6	II
2 - 3	III
0 - 2	None-III

The three levels of IV&V tasks include various tasks that grow in scope and complexity as you progress from one level to the next. The IV&V levels are defined as:

### Level III

- (a) Evaluation of software documentation;
- (b) Participation in milestone reviews and formal qualification testing, evaluation of test plans;
- (c) Identification of critical requirements and design issues;
- (d) Monitoring the development process and providing technical consultation;
- (e) Evaluation of critical test results;
- (f) Performing selected audits.

### Level II

Same tasks as Level III plus the following:

- (a) Analysis of selected critical functions;
- (b) Spot checking design performance;
- (c) Independently testing critical code;
- (d) Analysis of developer's test results;
- (e) Independent evaluation of all software problem reports.

### Level I

Same tasks as level II plus the following:

- (a) Structural and functional analysis of requirements, design, and code;
- (b) Propose alternative designs for critical design areas;
- (c) Redefine key code;
- (d) Conduct special test in critical areas beyond contractor's formal qualification tests (i.e., stress testing, simulations).

Each IV&V level is progressively more detailed and comprehensive than the previous level. The realism of the criticality values depend on the experience level and background of the people performing the analysis. To select the scope of IV&V and to ensure that its results are not biased, someone other than the software developer or the potential IV&V agent should perform the analysis.

It is important to note that IV&V involves activities over the entire software life cycle and that it is more than just another software test activity. Too often the majority of the IV&V effort doesn't start until the software is in the test phase when problems become more visible. Waiting until testing to identify and remove problems loses most of the benefits associated with IV&V.

The tasks performed by the IV&V agent can vary greatly in terms of the costs versus the benefit gained by the government. The program office should make provisions to terminate an IV&V task when its cost exceeds its benefit. The program office should establish criteria and/or thresholds for terminating IV&V support. If the IV&V agent is the sup-

porting command for example, program management responsibility transfer might be chosen as the termination point. If the IV&V contractor is for level III tasks, then completion of reviews on the operations and maintenance manuals may be the termination criteria. A termination clause for an IV&V effort should be included in all IV&V contracts or tasking documents.

#### 11.5.4 Estimating Software IV&V Costs

There are no magic formulas to help predict IV&V costs. IV&V cost estimating requires a thorough understanding of the system software and sound judgment. This section provides some simple guidelines to follow when estimating IV&V costs. These guidelines are based on historical trend data and past experience.

In general, the cost of software IV&V can range from 10 to 50 percent of the cost of developing the software depending on the IV&V level selected [1]. The majority of IV&V programs are usually at the lower end of this cost range. Figure 11-2 graphically depicts the relationship between the IV&V level and cost as a percentage of software

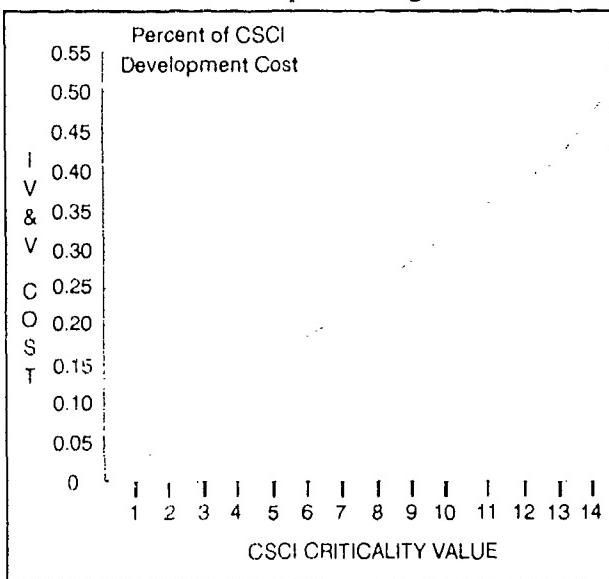


Fig. 11-2 IV&V Costs Vs. Criticality Values

development cost. From this figure and the software's criticality value, the IV&V cost as a percentage of the total software or CSCI's development cost can be estimated. These estimates may be on the high side because they were taken from programs that did not use DOD-STD-2167A, *Defense System Software Development* or MIL-STD-1815A, *Ada Programming Language*. Use of these two standards should decrease IV&V costs. Both standards increase the engineering discipline in the software development process and this improves software quality and makes the IV&V effort easier.

The above guidelines assume that the software development cost has been correctly estimated and accurately defined in terms of:

- (a) Size (lines of code);
- (b) Complexity;
- (c) Volatility of requirements;
- (d) Programming language;
- (e) Quality of existing software and documentation (when modifying or using existing software);
- (g) Maturity of system software and development tools.

Variations in any of these factors can impact software development cost and subsequent IV&V cost. Before attempting to estimate IV&V cost, it is very important to have a thorough understanding of the software requirements.

IV&V costs should seldom, if ever, exceed 50 percent of the software development cost. Above the 50 percent level, it means that one expects software failures to have catastrophic

effects on the program and that such failures are highly likely to occur. If this is the case, it probably means that the application is beyond the state-of-the-art or at the very least on the leading edge of technology and may not be ready to proceed into full scale development.

### 11.5.5 Selecting IV&V Agent

Selecting an IV&V agent is the responsibility of the program office. The agent selected must be autonomous from the software developer. The IV&V agent may be a part of the prime's organization but must report to a level above the head of the software development team (similar to any contractor's quality assurance organization). However, there can be significant benefits from using the software support activity (SSA) as the IV&V agent. This gives the SSA a vested interest in the software development since they must support the system after system delivery.

The following guidelines should help in selecting the best qualified IV&V source:

(a) **IV&V Experience** - IV&V involves the use of specialized techniques performed by highly skilled personnel for detecting errors not usually found by the software developer. Therefore, one of the most important qualifications of a potential IV&V agent is experience. The IV&V agent must have a strong background in the latest IV&V techniques and have a successful track record. A large amount of IV&V experience gives the IV&V agent the intuitive insight into where problems most likely occur; the ability to quickly recognize problem areas and pit falls; expeditiously recommend sound solutions; and experience in working harmoniously with the software developer in a pressure filled environment. It is imperative that the agent's IV&V experience be commensurate with the level of IV&V desired on that application.

One does not want an IV&V agent working on a level I IV&V effort whose entire experience is limited to level III IV&V.

(b) **Application Experience** - The IV&V agent must have experience in developing or performing IV&V on similar type systems and be qualified in the technology area under development;

(c) **Personnel Experience** - The management and technical personnel must have a strong IV&V background on similar programs and be proficient in using their company's IV&V tools. In addition, they must also have detailed knowledge of similar systems and the technology areas being developed;

(d) **IV&V Tool Library** - The IV&V agent should have IV&V tools that are appropriate for the specified IV&V level. These tools should have been regularly used in the past and not require inordinately specialized talent to use. The existence of a large tool library is of little value if the tools cannot be easily used or the IV&V agent is not thoroughly familiar with their use and limitations.

To determine the qualifications of an IV&V agent the program manager has two options. First, review the agent's past performance on similar applications. Second, perform a software capability/capacity review on the IV&V agent as described in Chapter 8.

## 11.6 REFERENCES

1. AFSC/AFLCP 800-5, *Software Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V)*, 1988.
2. ESD-TR-326, *Software Acquisition Management Guidebook: Validation and Certification*, Electronic Systems Division, Hanscom AFB, MA, August 1977.

# CHAPTER 12

---

## METRICS

### 12.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter deals with the mechanics of measuring the progress of a software development effort. The material is addressed from a top level perspective and is typical of the data that is usually presented to a program manager. Because the data will be summary level data, additional data at the next level of detail may be required to support a thorough review. The software manager should have more details and ready access to the contractor's data. To receive metrics data requires that this requirement be clearly called out in the contract. It is important to examine the contractor's process to determine what data is available and to use the contractor's system as much as possible. The government should refrain from imposing unnecessary requirements on a software developer such as too many metrics, frequent reporting periods, or peculiar data formats. If the data is not available, it may indicate a weakness in the contractor's ability to properly manage software development and to provide progress visibility to the program office.

### 12.2 TYPES OF METRICS

There are many different software metrics available but few of them are proven. Software metrics are still in various stages of development so their utility, timeliness and cost will differ greatly. Metrics, however, can be used for timely and realistic adjustments to the software development process in order to balance cost, schedule and performance objectives. In addition, metrics help assure the delivery of a product which will satisfy the user's needs and which may be more easily and economically supported and evolved.

Software metrics may be divided into three areas: management metrics, quality metrics and process metrics.

#### 12.2.1 Management Metrics

These metrics are primarily concerned with indicators which help determine progress against plan. The indicators are selected from

drivers which have an impact on the required effort. Cost estimating models are used to relate the drivers to effort, cost and schedule. In addition to these drivers, a set of product progress indicators are selected to help determine the impact of changes in the drivers to product progress and as more direct indicators of program progress. The trends in these indicators support forecasts of future progress, early trouble detection and realism in plan adjustments. Management metrics have been applied effectively to programs at several system commands over the past five years.

### 12.2.2 Quality Metrics

These metrics are primarily concerned with product attributes which affect performance, user satisfaction, supportability, and ease of change. Examples of quality metric indicators are error density, reliability, expandability, and portability. Although reliability and error density metrics have been in use for some time, more development in the quality metrics' area is required to relate these metrics to program success. A number of design and analysis tools which support the use of quality indicators are emerging in this area. Two tools which are useful to Ada software development programs are the Ada Test and Verification System (ATVS), developed by the Rome Air Development Center and the Ada Measurement and Analysis Tool (ADAMAT), developed by the Dynamics Research Corp.

The costs of applying quality metrics are generally higher than those for management metrics.

### 12.2.3 Process Metrics

These metrics are concerned with those indicators that deal with organizations, tools,

techniques and procedures and are used to develop and deliver the software products. Good examples of process indicators are contained in the Software Engineering Institute's (SEI's) contractor capability assessment questionnaire and ASD Pamphlet 800-5, *Software Development Capability and Capacity Review* [1]. Process metrics may provide earlier indications of difficulty and the need for remedial action. They may provide the only rich source of feedback for process improvement. More effort, however, is required on the definition of process indicators and the relationship of the process to program success. A number of activities at the SEI are underway in this area.

The costs of applying process metrics are also generally higher than those for management metrics. The rest of this chapter primarily addresses management metrics.

## 12.3 METRICS APPLICATION

Uncertainties and pressures for change exist throughout all phases of the acquisition process. Change in the acquisition process is inevitable as development proceeds and requirements become better defined; as cost, performance and schedule estimates are refined; and as personnel, machine, test and support resource requirements are identified.

To support these adjustments, indicators of actual versus planned progress are useful. However, the Full Scale Development (FSD) activities appear to be the most appropriate ones for application of management metrics. The degree of definition, the data availability, and the criticality of decisions during these activities is consistent with a vigorous measurement program. The Concept Exploration (CE) and Demonstration/Validation (D/V) activities should provide good insights into remaining risks and uncertainties. These ac-

tivities also provide useful information for tailoring FSD Request for Proposal (RFP) requirements for metrics data and analysis, and for source selection criteria and weightings.

### **12.3.1 Pre-Solicitation**

The risks in requirements definition, design, resource requirements and technology application should be defined during the CE and D/V activities leading to RFP preparation and source selection for FSD. The likely areas of uncertainty should be identified sufficiently to provide some basis for tailoring the RFP and source selection criteria. The tailoring should reflect the type of data input and the processing and analysis required for the specific project. If the early activities are shortened or eliminated as may be the case for Non-Developmental Item (NDI) systems or systems where few of a kind are being procured, tailoring of the data requirements may be more difficult and changes in data needs, processing and analysis should be expected. A larger set of data inputs may initially be required.

The measures called out in the RFP will generally be a broader set than required for the project after the source selection and negotiation activities have been completed. The information gathered during these activities on development approach, risk assessment and contractor process maturity will be used to tailor the data collection and analysis to the particular contractor's capability and resources.

The efforts prior to the completion of the FSD solicitation package should be geared towards refining the scope of the project in terms of scrubbed requirements, realistic baselines, an independent cost and schedule estimate, and a risk reduction plan. The government should

establish an appropriate base and strategy for contractor selection and generate a plan for the application of management metrics.

### **12.3.2 Government Model**

The government must have some set of estimating relationships, historical data or estimating model to develop an independent cost and schedule estimate. The independent estimates are necessary to bring realism into the source selection process and for the negotiation of contract award. A database to support generation of estimates and to update cost estimating relationships and model parameters should be maintained by the system commands. The collection of data should be done in such a manner that the use of data across projects is facilitated and the results are meaningful. The use of the database, model, and estimating relationships carry over to support of the monitoring activities which take place after contract award. The historical experience may be used to set thresholds for review and assess the realism of plan adjustments.

### **12.3.3 Resource Needs**

The cost of tracking software development status through use of management metrics is a function of the size and complexity of the software development, the previous experience of the contractor and government with the problem domain, and the maturity of the contractor's software development process. Management metric data needs to be provided by the contractor and processed and analyzed by both the contractor and the government. The contractor needs the data to understand his own progress and to adjust his plans and application of resources as well as to report meaningful progress to the government. Although the contractor should perform the bulk of the analysis and reporting,

experience has shown that the government must have access to the basic data and some capability to independently analyze and present progress results.

The largest potential driver of government effort is the level of maturity of the selected contractor's software development process. A contractor at low maturity levels will not have a well-defined process, progress will be more difficult to determine, and generally meaningful measures of progress will not be available until later in the development cycle. The application of metrics will more certainly be an additional activity, and existing process and analysis tools will be rudimentary or ad hoc. The contractor's ability to provide analyses to support government needs for program status information will be limited. If metric's application is to be useful, the requirements for government efforts will increase. Unless there is some process definition and some basis for in-process measurement, the use of after-the-fact product measures may be the only practical approach. Provisions for increased effort and schedule to support rework likely will be required.

The required government level of effort to monitor management metrics for program with 50-250 thousand lines of source code has generally been between 1 to 3 man years per year. As quality and process metrics' applications grow, the level of effort may increase by 1 to 2 man years per year. However, as software contractors' software development processes mature, the type of measures will change and their utility will increase. The required government effort may then decrease and become more of an audit function that checks to see that the contractor is following his defined process.

The government requires personnel skilled in software engineering and development to

make best use of the metrics' application. If a Program Office does not have this capability in house, support could be provided through Systems Engineering and Technical Assistance (SETA) or IV&V contractors. Experience at the Naval Underwater Systems Center (NUSC) has shown that a core group of metrics knowledgeable personnel who look across programs are a valuable asset to the system command and its program offices. They have the capability to build or adapt analysis tools, maintain a data base for historical comparisons, tailor the data needs to the particular project, and evolve the set of metrics to better serve the command.

The contractor level of effort for applying management metrics has varied from 1 to 5 man years per year. A number of other program office/contractor activities, such as configuration management, technical performance monitoring, and cost/performance reporting, require data inputs processing and analysis that are similar to the data input, processing and analysis required to support the use of management metrics. In addition to the personnel effort required, analysis tools and computer resources are also needed.

The use of management metrics on a program should be called for in the solicitation package. The source selection plan should include criteria for evaluating the contractor's response.

#### 12.3.4 RFP and SOW

The RFP needs to describe a core set of measures which attempt to anticipate the pertinent parameters and the degree of disaggregation (i.e., breakout into critical components) of these parameters required to provide good insight into software development status and support realistic program ad-

justment. The choice of contractor is not known at RFP time, and so the core set of measures must be broad enough to cover different development processes and approaches, different levels of contractor maturity and broad sets of possible risks. In addition, it is difficult to predict ahead of time how progress will proceed and what questions may be asked. Experience captured from previous projects may be used to adjust the core set of measures to anticipate later needs.

### **12.3.5 Choice of Measures**

Detailed plans for the software development process are formulated and submitted in the FSD proposals. Contracts are awarded and management actions are guided by a set of plans for the software development process keyed to a set of assumptions. These assumptions include software size and type, personnel and machine resources and capabilities, complexity and criticality of design and performance, and requirements' certainty and stability. These drivers and assumptions are used to estimate cost, schedule and performance and to allocate resources. The factors which significantly affect cost and schedule generally are those which are identified as the driving factors in commonly used software cost estimating models. Keeping track of these drivers provides good insight into the likelihood of change in planned progress. It should also highlight the need for tuning or adjusting plans to meet program objectives.

### **12.3.6 Use of Models and Norms**

The contractor proposed plans and assumptions and the models or historical data which relate the assumptions to effort are the base against which progress may be measured during FSD. During the source selection, reviews of each contractor's assumptions and models will point up risk areas and highlight

data which will be valuable for verifying assumptions and which will be critical for impact analysis. The risk assessments and the scoring of proposals provide keys to the measurement areas which should receive most emphasis and determine the degree of disaggregation of the data that is required. A centralized activity for keeping track of data and cost estimating relationships at each systems command is recommended to provide historic data for assessing plan realism and determining risks as well as updating the data collection form.

### **12.3.7 Process Maturity**

The use of the SEI process maturity model in the Software Capability Evaluation (SCE) provides another source of inputs for tailoring the data set. The evaluation highlights strengths and weaknesses of the contractor's software development process. This is key to selecting the metrics and level of disaggregation. In addition, the maturity level indicates the degree to which the measures may be effective and their likely timeliness in determining status or aiding plan adjustment. The use of these evaluation techniques also provide a basis for contractor improvement of the proposed process.

### **12.3.8 Negotiation**

During negotiation the information gained from the source selection analysis and evaluation activities are used to adjust contract requirements for collection and analysis of management metrics.

The key results of the source selection analysis and evaluation should be used to adjust the data set, processing and analysis which will be required of the selected contractor. The assumptions which support the level of effort and schedule decisions should be

recorded. The estimating relationships or models which relate the assumptions to that effort and schedule should also be recorded along with the reasons for differences between assumptions and norms. The contractor's proposal, as adjusted by the negotiation, represents a plan for software development. By signing the contract, the government chooses the contractor's plan for the software development effort.

The types of measures to be employed and their degree of disaggregation should be influenced by the SCE report. The level of maturity and the strengths and weaknesses recorded in the report should be used to add or adjust data requirements. The contractor's plan for process improvement in response to the SCE report should be approved and provisions for tracking progress should be included in the contract.

The risk areas identified during source selection should be recorded and used to adjust the data collection and analysis requirements. Contractor plans for risk reduction should be approved and provisions for tracking progress should be included in the contract.

### 12.3.9 Contract Monitoring

The data on drivers and assumptions should be monitored periodically to determine progress against plan and the need for plan adjustment. Care should be taken to preserve original baselines and assumptions so that adjusted plans do not paint a false picture of progress history. In addition to the data on drivers and assumptions, data on product progress is required to provide more direct indications of plan status and progress. Indicators of design, code and test progress in the form of hard milestones (rather than percentage of planned effort complete) provide "inchstones" for determining program

progress. Agreement on definitions of the hard milestones should be established before contract award. Much of the data should be automatically generated by modern configuration management tools. Trends in the data may be used to forecast future progress and indicate the realism of proposed plan adjustments. The extrapolation of the trend data on actuals generally provides the best estimate of activity completion.

The measures used for keeping track of progress are generally interdependent. For example an increase in software size should be accompanied with an increase in resources or a change in schedule. These interdependencies may be used to assess validity of reporting and realism of plan adjustments.

The use of management metrics on a number of system commands programs has proven to be a valuable aid in detecting early trouble, adjusting plans realistically and forecasting future progress. In addition, metrics have provided a basis for asking more useful and directed questions about the true status and well being of the project.

### 12.3.10 Adjustments and Refinements

Feedback from progress on the effort should be used to adjust and refine the collection and analysis requirements. Requirements may be deleted in areas in which progress is good or the level of data aggregation may be increased. New requirements for collection and analysis may be generated as a result of poor progress, special problems or better understanding of the process. Lessons learned should be passed to future projects.

## 12.4 PROGRAM MANAGER'S METRICS

The state-of-practice in software metrics is far from perfect, but there are a few recom-

- Software Size and Cost Status
- Manpower Application Status
- Cost and Schedule Status
- Resource Margins
- Quantitative Software Spec Status
- Design and Development Status
- Defects/Faults/Errors/Fixes
- Software Problem Report Status
- Test Program Status
- Delivery Status

**Table 12-1 Metrics**

mended metrics that are appropriate for all programs. Metrics are generally relevant only to an individual program and indicate trends or alert flags; they are not absolutes. In other words, a specific value may not describe absolute performance or cost but the collective data may provide a level of confidence on the range of performance or cost.

The following material is extracted almost entirely from the Air Force Systems Command, Electronics Systems Division and MITRE document, ESD-TR-88-001, *Software Management Metrics* [2]

Table 12-1 lists the metrics that should normally be available, at least monthly, to the program manager. The basic method requires an initial planned estimate as a baseline to measure progress against. Actuals are then tracked against the baseline plan and trends or thresholds are analyzed for progress or problems.

Although there are other metrics available, the list in Table 12-1 is an attempt to provide the program manager with a "Top Ten List."

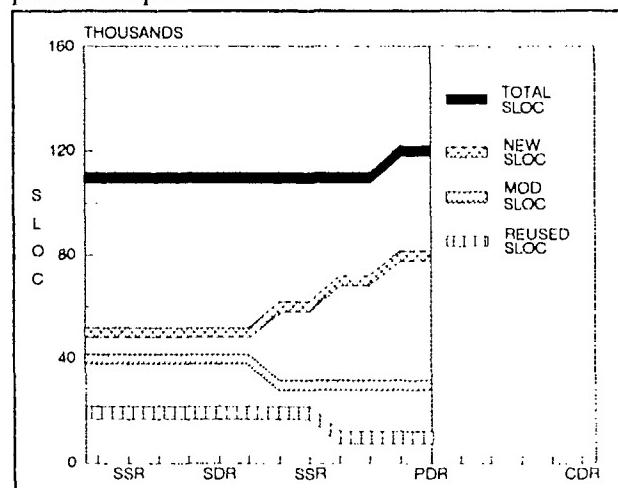
#### 12.4.1 Software Size and Cost Status

The software size metric tracks the magnitude of the software development effort while the cost metric tracks expenditure of resources

(Figure 12-1). The metrics for each Computer Software Configuration Item (CSCI) are normally tracked individually. The trend should be fairly stable, although a deviation may indicate a better understanding of the requirements. One should look for an unstable baseline, requirements growth, and poor planning. The software size metric is generally the input to a cost model such as COCOMO [3]. Changes in size require more resources and reflect a change in cost. The cost model is not shown.

#### Rules of Thumb for Software Size and Cost Metrics

- (a) Month to month estimates should not vary by more than 5%. Variation may indicate a better understanding of the requirements or problems with the contractor's development process.
- (b) The costs of developing new code, modifying code, or using existing code differ. Typical effective weights for source lines of code (SLOC) are: New code 100%, Modified code 50%, Existing code 10%. It takes about twice the effort to produce new code as it does to modify existing code.
- (c) SLOC requirements directly impact manpower requirements.

**Fig. 12-1 Software Size**

(d) Tailor the metrics by tracking:

- Equivalent SLOC (weighted);
- Each programming language;
- The metrics for each CSCI separately;
- Object code size.

#### 12.4.2 Manpower Application Status

Tracking planned versus actual manpower loading provides visibility into future schedule problems (Figure 12-2). Resources should be identified as either experienced personnel and senior personnel, or as inexperienced and junior personnel. Tracking losses is also important, particularly if the losses are in key positions such as the chief programmer.

#### Rules of Thumb for Manpower Metrics

(a) The ratio of total to experienced personnel should never exceed 6:1. A ratio of 3:1 is typical.

(b) Initial staffing usually comprises about 25% of total personnel requirements.

(c) The front end should be leveraged with more experienced personnel.

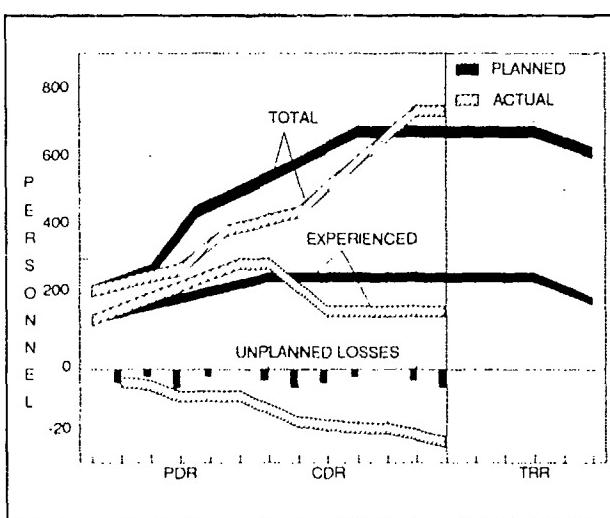


Fig. 12-2 Software Personnel

(d) The development schedule depends on the amount of man-months expended:

- Understaffing is an early sign of schedule slippage;

- If you are behind, you can't always catch up by adding more manpower. Adding manpower may even further delay the overall schedule;

- Judicious use of overtime may help;

- Additional use of manpower may work but only for tasks that can be separated or isolated with simple interfaces;

(e) High turnover or loss of key personnel is a sign of problems;

(f) Tailor the metrics by tracking the staffing for each:

- Development task;

- Skill (e.g. Ada, Data Base Management Systems, Artificial Intelligence);

- Organization (e.g., Software, Quality Assurance, Test).

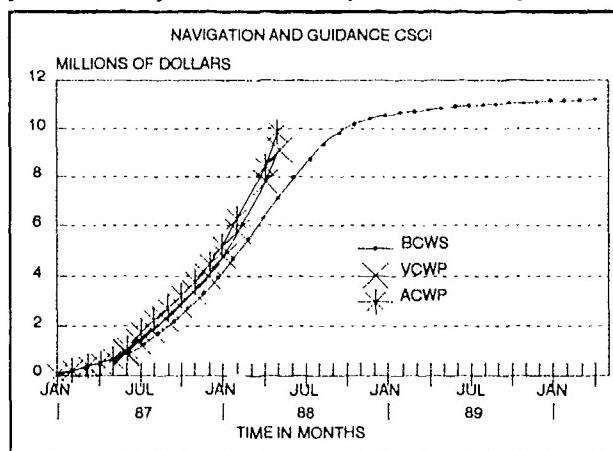
#### 12.4.3 Cost and Schedule Status

Financial reporting provides the status of work performed and actual cost of work performed versus the plan (Figure 12-3). This is the traditional Cost/Schedule and Control System. Typically, the data reported to the government provides little visibility into the software development status. This usually occurs because of inadequate definition of the software Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) as well as the level of reporting. The WBS levels must provide reasonable visibility to the program manager. One way to do this is by

defining a product oriented WBS for the software.

### Rules of Thumb for Cost and Schedule Metrics

- (a) Be alert to variation thresholds exceeding 10%.
- (b) Beware of efficiencies that are projected to improve. Past performance is a measure of productivity and efficiency and it is very useful



**Fig. 12-3 Software Cost and Schedule** for forecasting estimates to complete. Efficiencies don't usually improve that much.

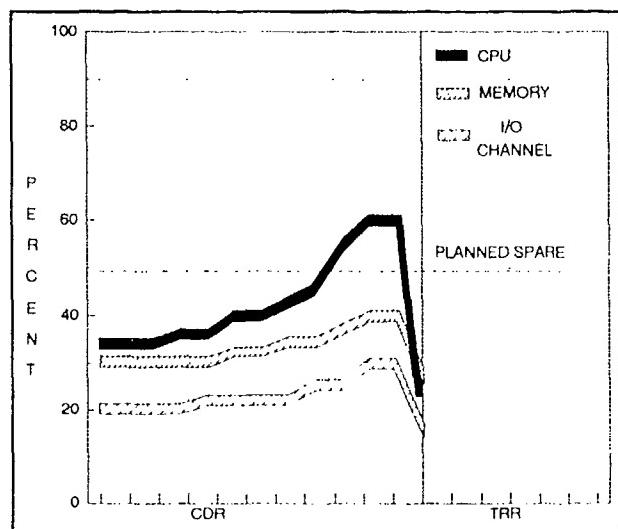
- (c) Tailor metrics by tracking:
- Each CSCI;
- Support software development.

#### 12.4.4 Resource Margins

Resources describe the hardware limitations of the systems. These include Central Processing Unit (CPU) throughput, memory size, and input/output channel capacity and rate (Figure 12-4). Resources can have a direct impact on software productivity and design efficiency. The development resource margins are as important as the target resources particularly for planning software support.

### Rules of Thumb for Resource Margin Metrics

- (a) CPU utilization should allow for a 50% margin at delivery (this means that only half of the resource has been used);
- (b) Memory utilization should allow 50% margin at delivery;
- (c) I/O utilization (channels and data rates) should allow 50% margin at delivery;
- (d) For real-time systems, performance and productivity deteriorates quickly above 70% utilization;
- (e) Consider hardware resource limitations (e.g. memory addressing as a hardware limit);
- (f) Resource utilization tends to increase with time so plan for expansion;
- (g) Schedule and cost "bomb" at 10% margin (in other words you'll already have seen an exponential rise in the effort required to squeeze, pare, re-code, fix, etc.);
- (h) Tailor metrics by tracking:



**Fig. 12-4 Computer Resource Margins**

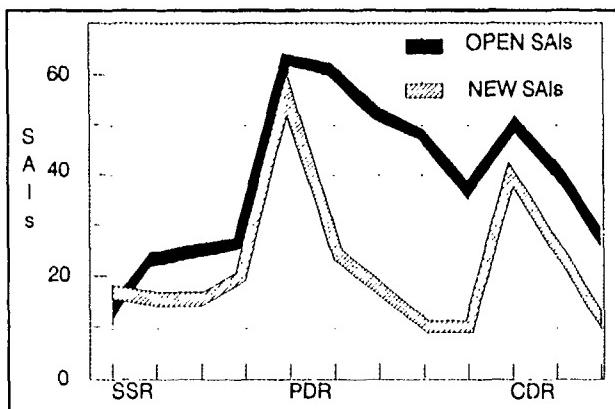
exponential rise in the effort required to squeeze, pare, re-code, fix, etc.);

(h) Tailor metrics by tracking:

- According to architecture (e.g., multiple CPUs);
- Average and worst case;
- Host and Target equipment;

#### 12.4.5 Quantitative Software Specification Status

A baseline plan is initially estimated for the quantity of discrete software requirements to include both functional requirements and in-

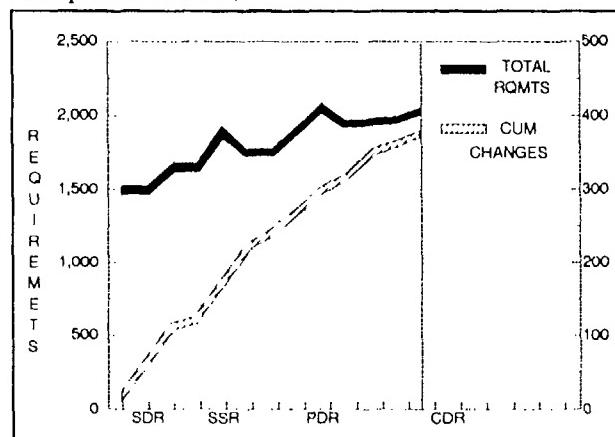


**Fig. 12-5 Software Volatility/Action Items**

terface requirements. Actual progress is tracked against the plan. This metric provides visibility into the progress of the requirements analysis as well as the growth of the requirements in the baseline (Figure 12-5 and 12-6).

#### Rules of Thumb for Specification Metrics

- (a) Each requirement should have a planned completion date;



**Fig. 12-6 Software Volatility/Requirements**

- (b) Requirements growth, no matter how small, will impact planned resources and should be contained from the beginning of the program;

- (c) Requirements' uncertainty leads to Engineering Change Proposals (ECPs);

- (d) Requirements are baselined at the Software Specification Review (SSR);

- (e) If the requirements are not stable by the Critical Design Review (CDR), the program is in serious trouble;

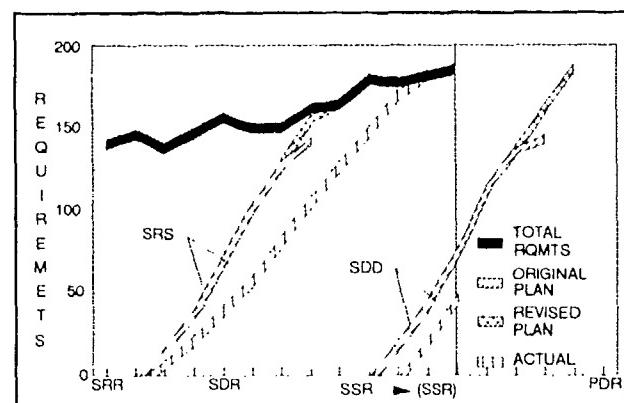
- (f) Requirements change after CDR will most probably impact the schedule;

- (g) Phase incremental development to allow the requirements to be revisited before the next increment's PDR;

- (h) Software action items should not remain open beyond 60 days.

#### 12.4.6 Design/Development Status

The contractor should describe in the Software Development Plan the process for inspections, walkthroughs and internal design reviews. These events can be tracked to determine the rate of progress. On a large project these events can number in the thousands (Figures 12-7 and 12-8).



**Fig. 12-7 Design Process**

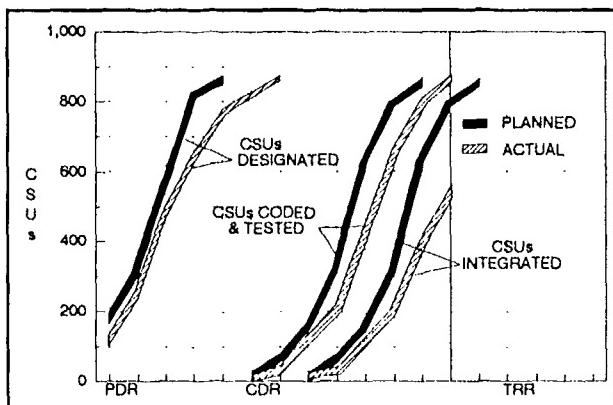


Fig. 12-8 Development Progress

### Rules of Thumb for Design Metrics

- (a) The Software Requirements Specification (SRS) should be complete before the Software Specification Review (SSR);
- (b) The Software Design Document (SDD) should be complete before the PDR;

### Rules of Thumb for Development Metrics

- (a) The CSU design should be complete before the CDR;
- (b) CSC integration and test must be completed before the Test Readiness Review (TRR);
- (c) Diverging from plan may mean schedule delays;
- (d) Track to cost model (e.g. COCOMO);
- (e) Estimated Source Lines of Code (SLOC) produced per staff month can be categorized as:

Easy Code	250-500
Moderate Code	100-250
Difficult Code	30-100

- (f) Tailor metrics by tracking:

- Each CSCI;

- Internal reviews of program design languages (PDLs);

- (g) Delaying development to obtain a better understanding of the requirements is usually a wise decision. Tradeoffs may be made to reduce requirements for gains in schedule;

- (h) Diverging from the plan means that the requirements are less understood. You may not be ready for the SSR;

- (i) Tailor the metrics by performing more detailed tracking, from the SDD to the Computer Software Unit (CSU).

### 12.4.7 Defects/Faults/Errors/Fixes

Tracking the actual performance of the process provides some visibility into the product quality. This is only true if the contractor has a controlled, repeatable process. Ad Hoc software development is not predictable.

A defect is an anomaly in the requirements and design. A fault is an anomaly in implementation (code). An error is the source of a fault and a fix is a correction of an error. Errors and fixes are tracked through the

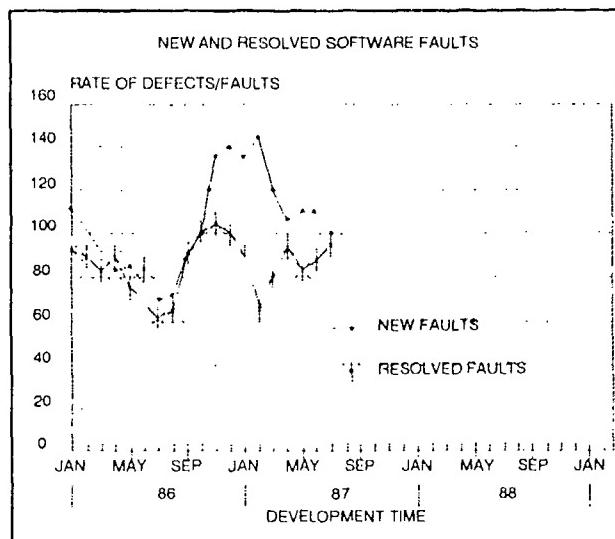


Fig. 12-9 Defects/Faults/Errors/Fixes

Software Problem Reporting system (Figure 12-9)

#### Rules of Thumb for Defects/Faults/Errors/Fixes/Metrics

- (a) Defect/fault/error rates are an early indication of product reliability.

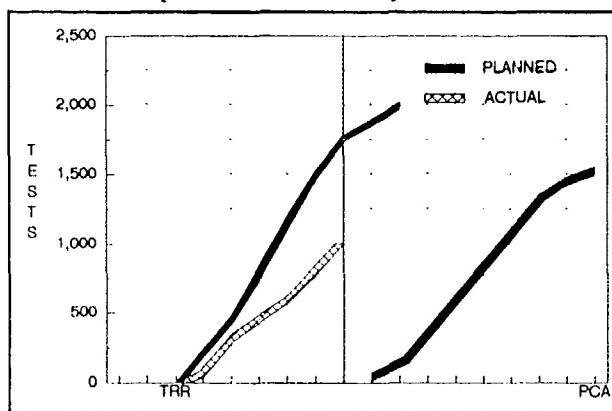


Fig. 12-10 Test Program Status

- (b) The contractor's process should focus on defect prevention and early fault detection.

#### 12.4.8 Test Program Status

The entire test process can be tracked from planning through detection of errors and correction (Figure 12-10). Quantitative measures can start with a requirements and test cross reference matrix. Progress can also be measured on planned versus actual tests performed.

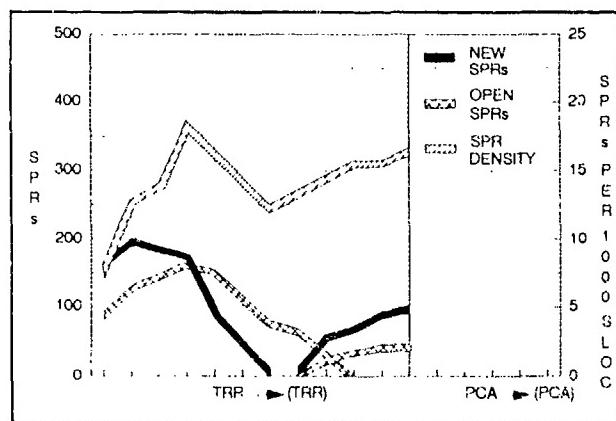


Fig. 12-11 Software Problem Reports

#### 12.4.9 Software Problem Reports Status

Software Problem Reports (SPRs) provide feedback on the correction of errors and are an indication of product quality (Fig. 12-11)

#### Rules of Thumb for SPRs

- (a) Planning should account for the iterative and interactive nature of testing;
- (b) The number of tests completed should converge on the number of tests planned;
- (c) Use trends to predict schedule;
- (d) Unresolved problems should decrease to zero as you approach the TRR and again as you approach the Physical Configuration Audit (PCA);
- (e) The number of SPRs is an indication of the testing adequacy and the code quality. Too many SPRs may indicate poor quality; too few may mean inadequate testing. It takes a process change to improve the rate and the quality. In today's state of practice a typical range is 5 to 30 SPRs per 1000 SLOC.
- (f) If the slope of open SPRs is positive then problems are being found faster than they are being fixed. If the slope is negative then the schedule can be predicted.
- (g) Tailor the metrics by tracking:
  - The number of days SPRs are open (e.g. 0-30, 30- 60, 60-90, over 90);
  - Open SPRs by type of software (e.g. application, support, test, operating system);
  - Open SPRs by priority (e.g. critical to operation, critical for integration, other);

- SPR density (SPRs per 1000 SLOC in categories 0-10, 11-20, 21-30, and over 30).

#### 12.4.10 Delivery Status

A good indicator of progress is to track both internal and external incremental delivery status (Figure 12-12). For example, one can track internal delivery to the test organization for integration and test and external delivery to an IV&V agency. Often, early problems in a release may be deferred to a later release. This delay should recognize the shift in resource requirements. Too many deferrals can spell disaster.

#### Rules of Thumb for Delivery Status Metrics

- (a) The number of CSUs per release should remain stable (within 10%).
- (b) Increments or "builds" should demonstrate useful capabilities as early as practical.

#### 12.5 SUMMARY

Metrics should provide the program manager a tool for much greater visibility into the software development than in the past. The metrics discussed in this chapter focused primarily on tracking progress. There are other techniques available to monitor product quality, although these are much harder to

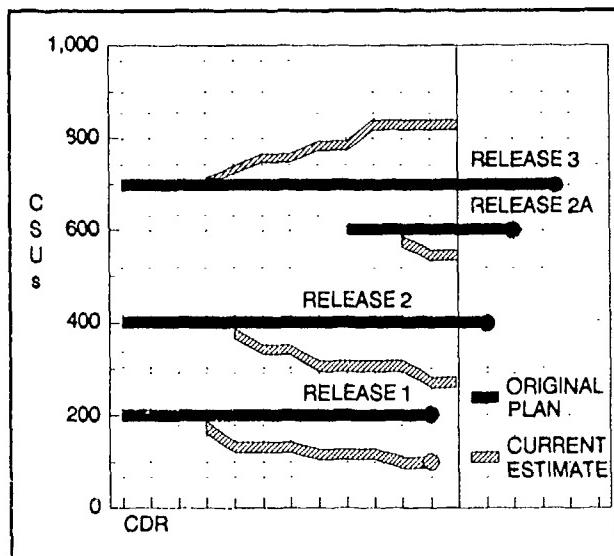


Fig. 12-12 Incremental Release Count

quantify. It is important that the contractor have the right mechanisms in place for proper discipline and commitment to quality.

#### 12.6 REFERENCES

1. ASD Pamphlet 800-5, *Software Development Capability and Capacity Review*, HQ Aeronautical Systems Division, Wright-Patterson AFB, Oh 45433, May 1988.
2. Schultz, Herman P., *Software Management Metrics*, Air Force Systems Command, Electronic Systems Division, Report ESD-TR-88-001, May 1988.
3. Boehm, Barry W., *Software Engineering Economics*, Prentice-Hall, 1981.

# CHAPTER 13

---

## EPILOGUE

### 13.1 INTRODUCTION

Improvements in software productivity are coming slowly. Present conventional techniques for software production make use of libraries of primitive functions or algorithms (See Figure 13-1). There is little carryover from past developments. The primary development effort is in-line with the delivery of the software product or capabilities and is dedicated to a single system. There is little ability to leverage the development investment and provide products for use on the next system. The resulting system structure is typified by many unique modules with complex interfaces requiring significant effort to integrate, test and maintain.

The communications among the various players (user, system designer, programmer) involved in software development, acquisition, delivery and use is constrained. The constraints arise from a number of factors including geography, personnel availability, lack of software development tools, procure-

ment and acquisition policy restrictions, and, the diverse backgrounds and training of the players. The resulting situation might be characterized as each player tossing requirements, designs, and comments over a wall to one another. These constrained communications, and the unique and customized implementations which result from our present ways of building software, usually require that the computer programmers play a key role in the delivery and transition of the system to the user. In fact, in many systems even the system designers and the system test group have a difficult time discovering critical failure modes and correcting problems economically when they are discovered. The need to use the software development organization during transition is often underestimated; especially when the software development organization is not the prime contractor. The prime usually phases out these programmers and performs the final system test and operational test and evaluation without them. Un-

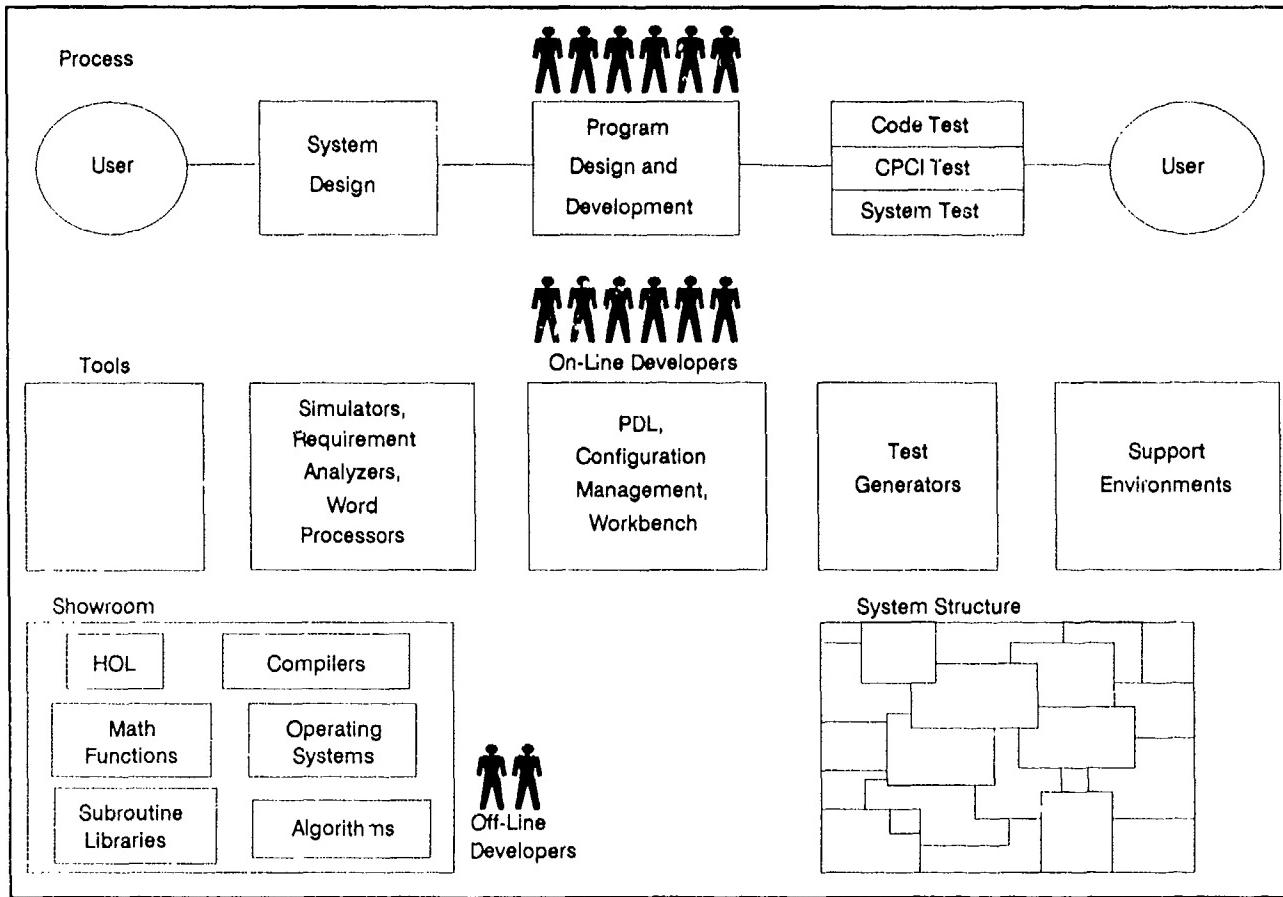


Fig. 13-1 Conventional Techniques

fortunately, current software development practice makes it difficult for the prime to perform these functions adequately.

There may be another way to build software and overcome some of the drawbacks of our present techniques. A model of an alternate software development technique is shown in Figure 13-2. In this model, showrooms of larger more capable pieces are developed off-line for later integration and use in multiple systems. The in-line activities are, therefore, more heavily directed towards program integration than to design and development. The testing emphasis is more on system testing than code or CSCI testing. Such an approach may support the use of computer aided design and manufacturing (CAD/CAM) for software. The resulting system structure is more regular, has simpler interfaces and is easier to test. Less in-line

development is required for the delivery of a software product or capabilities. This allows the off-line development effort to support a larger number of systems.

However, reusing software on multiple systems is a tough job. How can the performance and interface of the modules be described? How well can they be tested? What is their run time? How are they catalogued? Who owns the data rights? How are they guaranteed?

The technology and the management infrastructure needed to fully exploit reusability is not yet available. Efforts in the STARS program and at the Software Engineering Institute are investigating the technical and management advances required to answer these questions and to bring reusability closer to practice. In the meantime, greater use of best existing practice, tailored acquisition

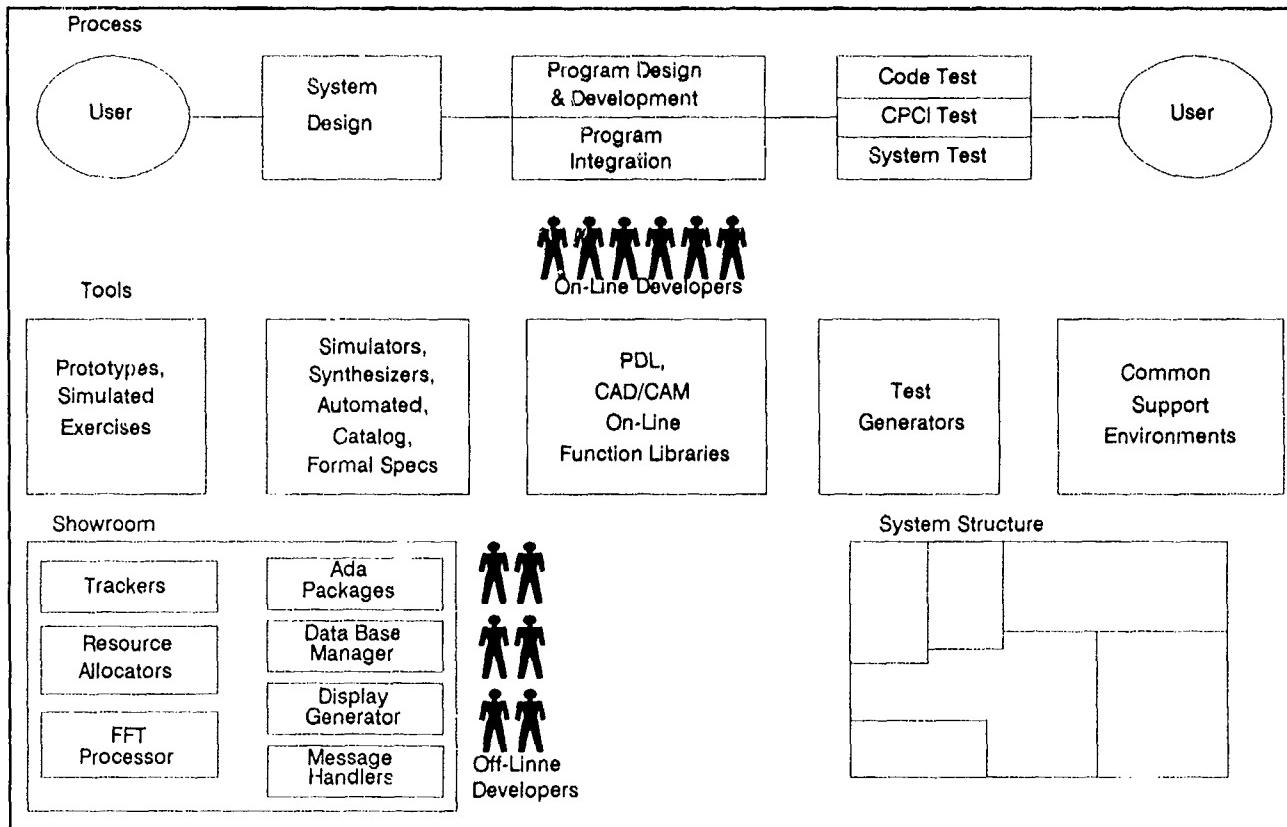


Fig. 13-2 Reusability

strategies, and improvement of tools and techniques are required to help manage the software acquisition process.

### 13.2 SOFTWARE COST UNCERTAINTIES

Because the current nature of the software development process is more like model shop or custom tailoring than like mass production, software cost estimating accuracy is a very strong function of the program phase. The uncertainty in the software development process is captured in Figure 13-3 [1]. Errors on the order of 4 to 1 are likely when estimating software costs at the start of a project.

These early cost estimates require difficult judgments of complexity, productivity and size. Experience indicates that the curve should be one-sided because software costs are never overestimated; they are always underestimated.

How is it then that most cost estimators advertise techniques which purport to provide 10 to 20% accuracy? Most of these estimates make use of regression analyses and deal with the process from the perspective of the right end of the curve. With present techniques, if you want better accuracy, you have to do something to move toward the greater experience part of the curve.

This can be done by building prototypes, making use of previously designed and developed products, using commercial off-the-shelf software, or finding an acquisition strategy which includes a contract definition phase or incremental development. A strategy is needed to delay major fund commitments until better software requirements and implementation definitions are obtained.

Early software cost estimating may be likened to the story of the old farmer who had a unique

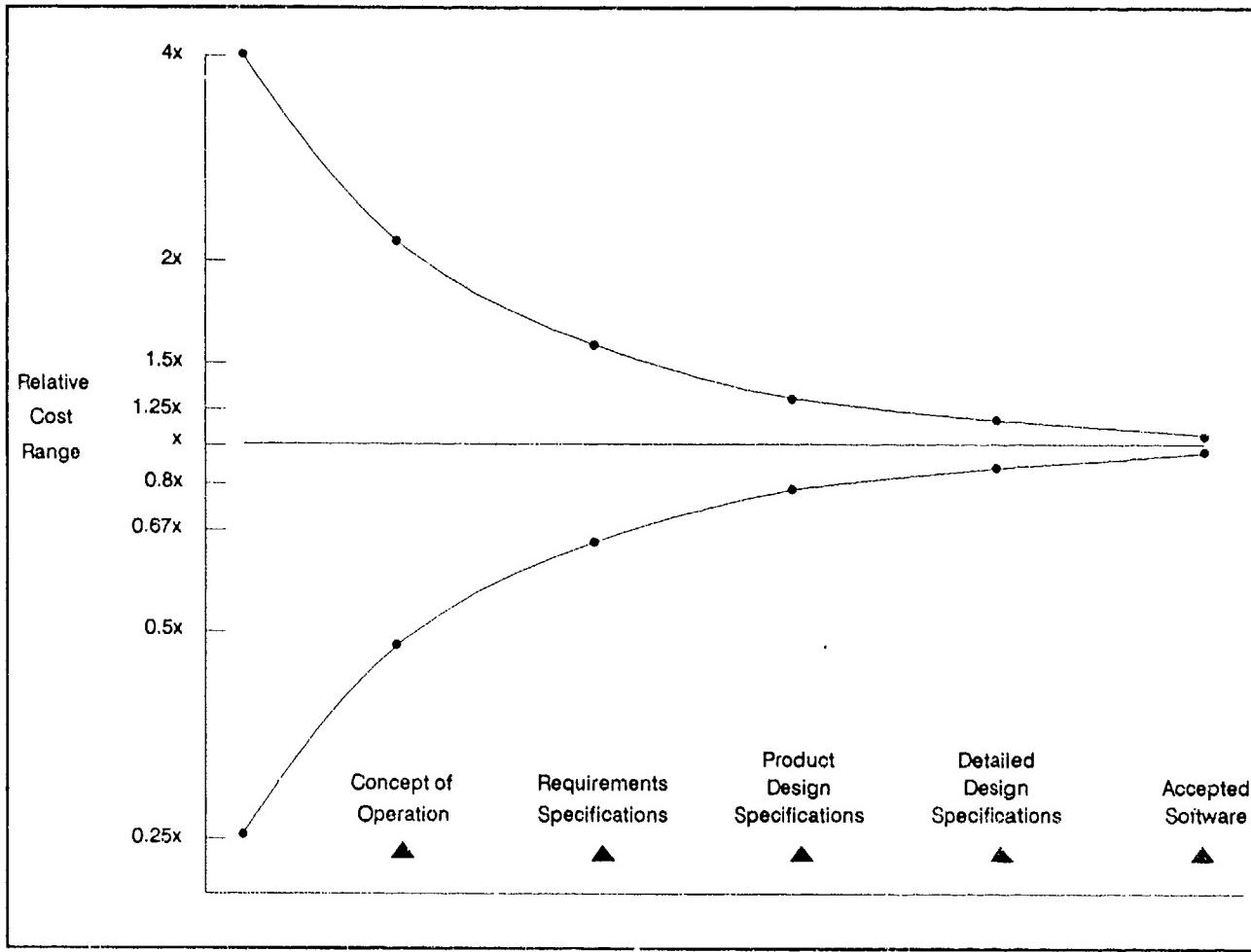


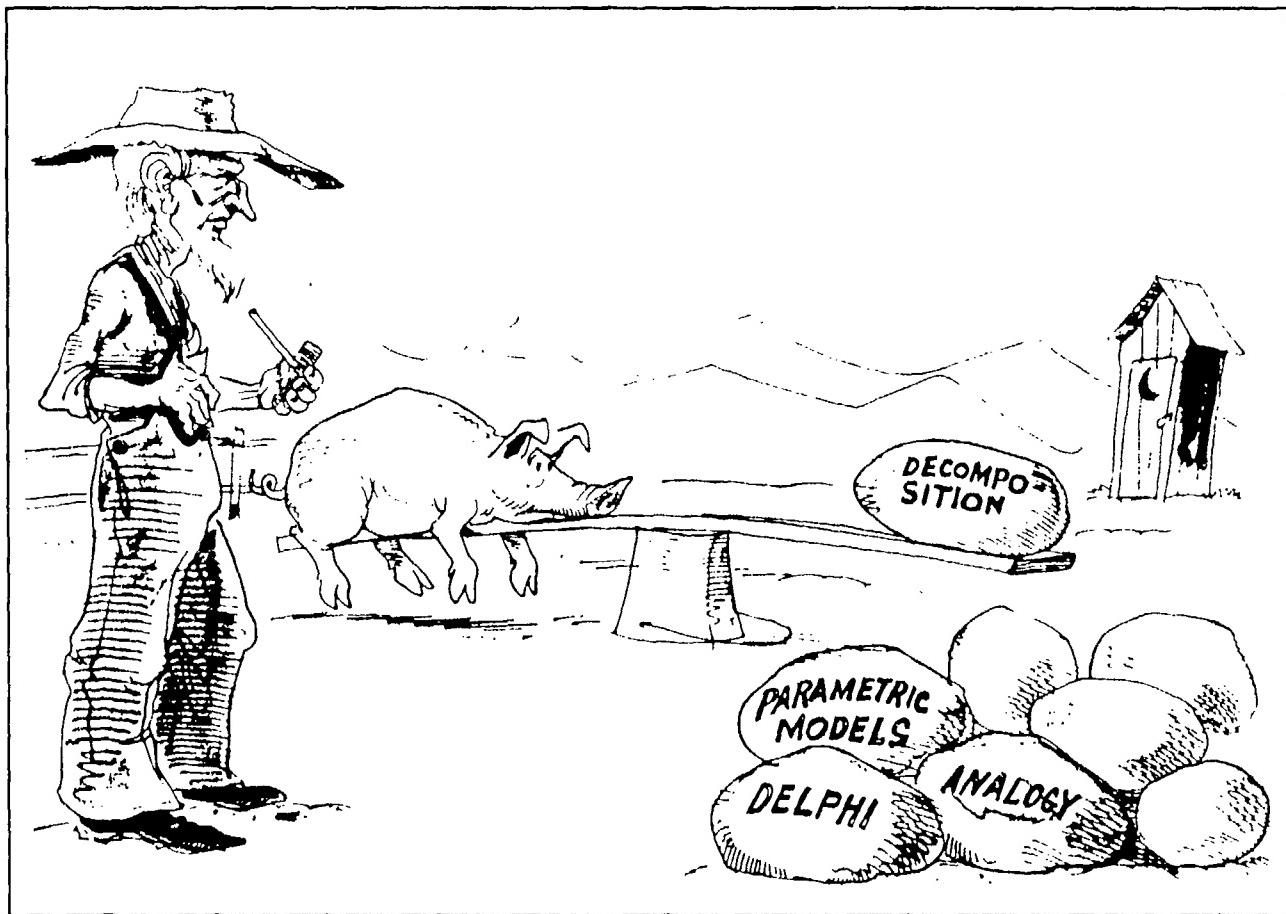
Fig. 13-3 Software Cost Estimating

way of estimating the weight of pigs (See Figure 13-4). "I don't need any of these new-fangled scales to do that," he said. He had an easy way to weigh pigs without scales. He laid a plank across a pail, put a stone on one end, a pig on the other, and balanced the plank. Then he guessed the weight of the stone. From that he could easily calculate the weight of the pig--to three significant figures. With current model shop techniques, one cannot write better specifications or obtain better cost estimates without first doing some part of the job to be specified or estimated.

### 13.3 SOFTWARE ACQUISITION CYCLE

The ideal acquisition cycle includes a concept exploration phase, a demonstration/validation phase, a full scale engineering develop-

ment phase, a production phase and a deployment phase. In most Command, Control and Communications ( $C^3$ ) systems acquisitions and in many non-developmental item (NDI) acquisitions, the normal weapon life cycle is compressed (See Figure 13-5) [2]. Although a concept exploration phase may take place, the demonstration/validation phase is generally omitted and the full scale development and production phases are combined. When no demonstration/validation phase is present, time somehow must be allowed for definition and detailed design. Many acquisition schedules call for preliminary design reviews as soon as three months after contract award. The contractor is forced to either accomplish the top level design in the proposal phase or in the short time available after award.



**Fig. 13-4 Estimating Techniques**

The use of top-down design has been recommended as an orderly and disciplined way to develop and test software. For new programs, however, one cannot perform top down design and development without some knowledge of the bottom (See Figure 13-6). One must have some assurance that allocations of requirements, from one baseline to the next, will still be valid when the lower level designs are developed. Historically, most Air Defense programs have run out of processing resources as a result of not understanding the need to carefully sort tracks before attempting radar data correlation. Prototypes of the difficult parts help validate requirement allocations and avoid breakage and rework.

#### 13.4 PROTOTYPES

Prototypes are useful in two ways. They help resolve requirements uncertainties by provid-

ing better user insight and lessening the misunderstanding that arises from just looking at paper requirements and specifications. They also help reveal implementation difficulties or constraints.

Prototypes generally make use of special operating procedures and operating systems and have limited interfaces and loading. They have no provisions for startover, continuity of operation, or maintenance, and use computers and code that are not intended for the target system. Too often the government uses the information from the prototype to generate high level system performance specifications for competitive bid with a new set of contractors. Much of the experience gained from the prototype development is lost in the process if the prototype developer is not the winner. With today's state-of-the-art software production techniques, it is very dif-

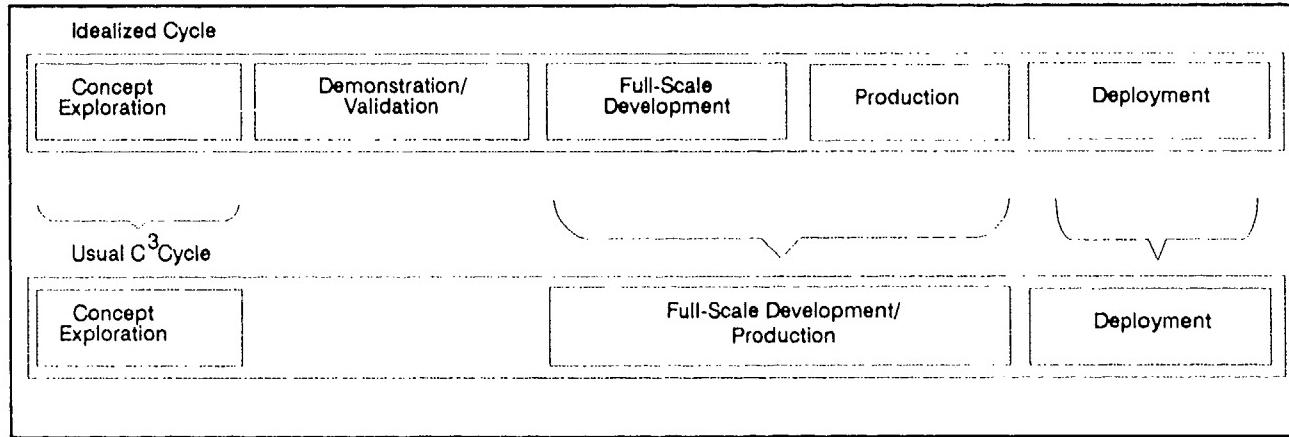


Fig. 13-5 System Acquisition Cycle

ficult to convert a developer's experience into specifications of sufficient quality to allow someone else to gain that knowledge and experience. Unless the original players, both user and development contractor, remain the same and the early prototype is very close to the end item, a second prototype must be built. Otherwise, some strategy such as incremental development must be used to help

manage the requirements and implementation uncertainties.

### 13.5 SCHEDULES AND MANNING

The amount of time the government allows for design, and the rate at which the contractor staffs the software development activity, have a major impact on the success of the

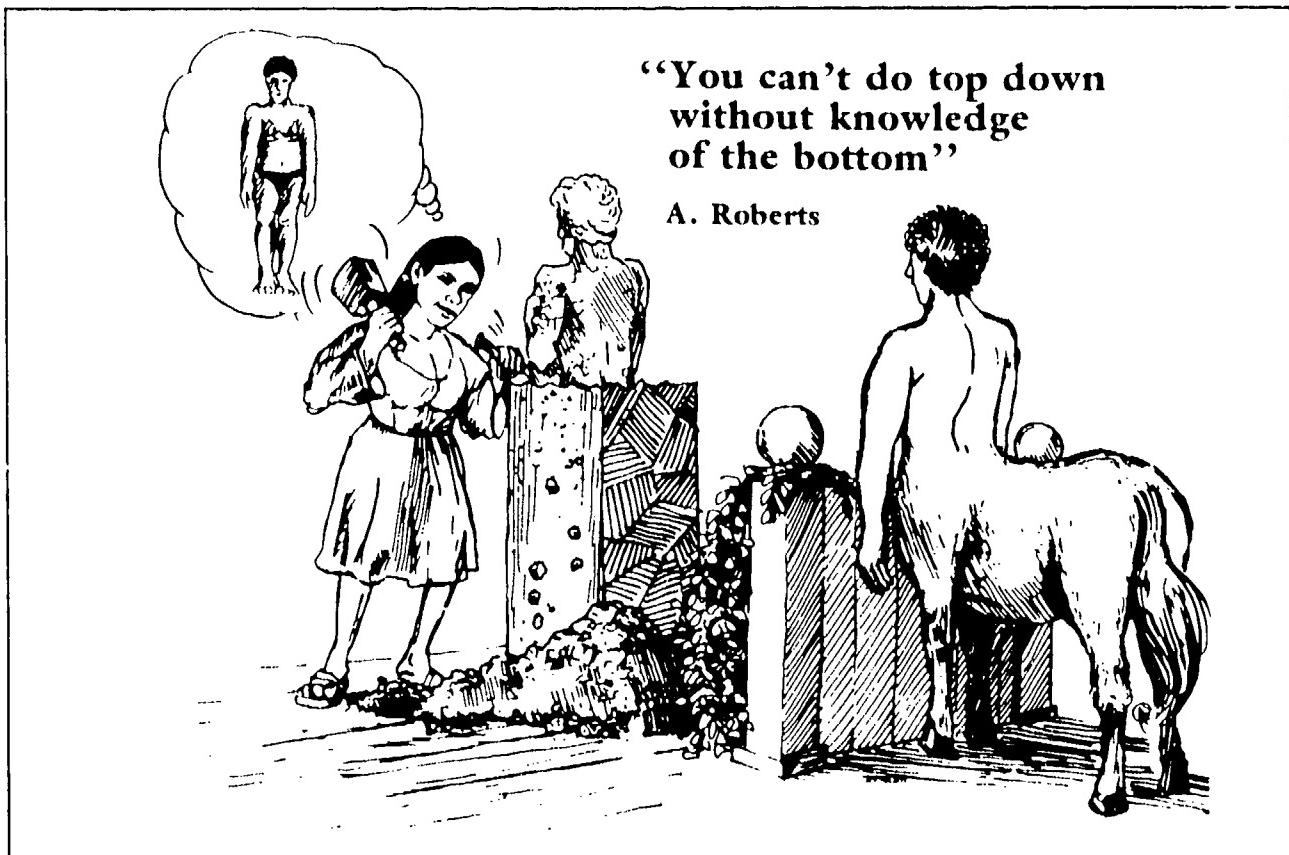
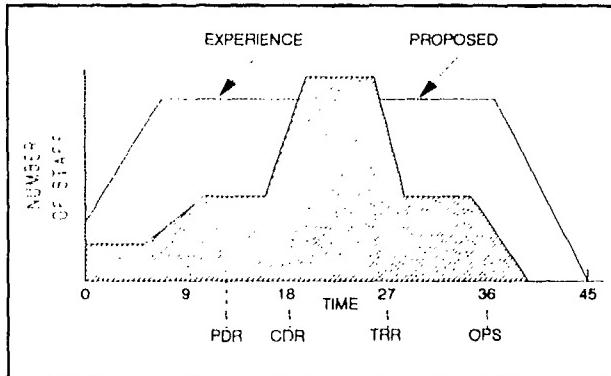


Fig. 13-6 Top-Down Design



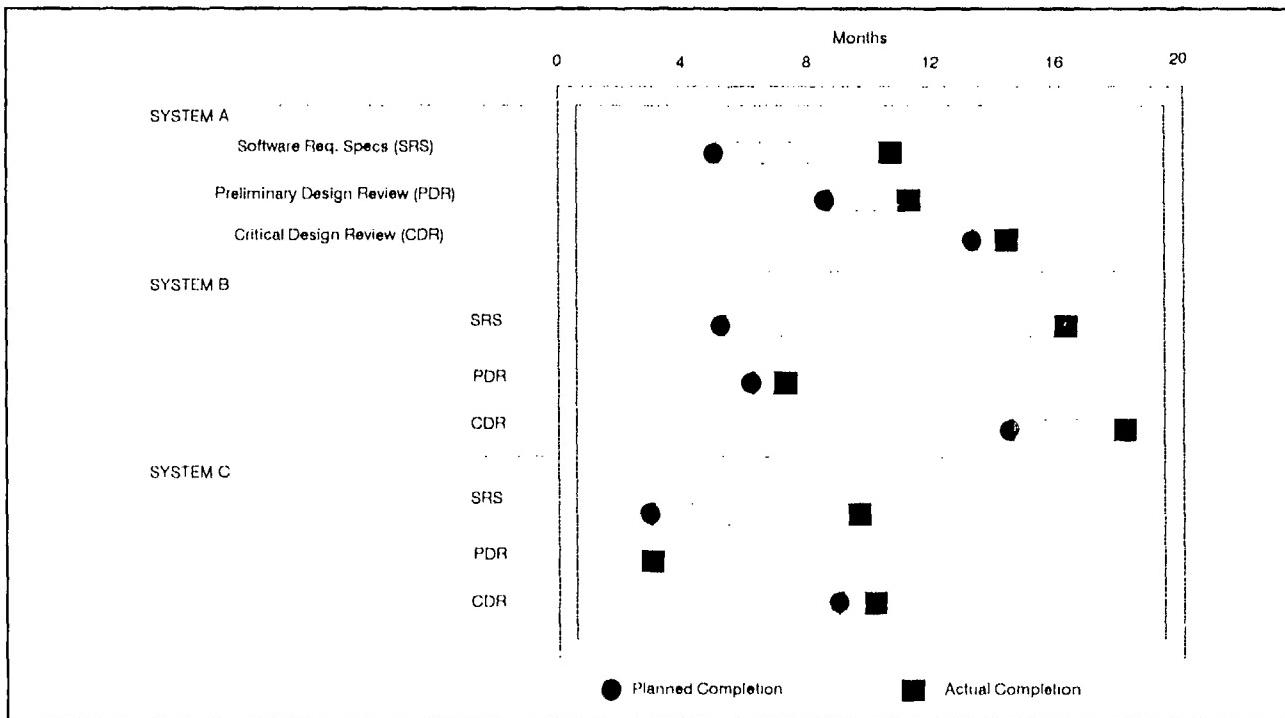
**Fig. 13-7 Software Manpower Phasing**

program. Devenney [3] examined 16 major acquisition programs at the Electronic Systems Division (ESD) at Hanscom AFB, Massachusetts. He found that in every case the contractor manned up quickly and that the manning level was constant throughout the program. The absence of a demonstration/validation phase and the requirement to hold PDR in the first few months of the contract forced this manning profile. More than ten years ago, Roberts [4] suggested a revised manning profile and model schedule for the early design activities leading to PDR and CDR (See Figure 13-7). The intent of this manning profile is to allow more time for

design analysis and breadboarding of the difficult parts of the job and to perform some work at a level below the level one is attempting to baseline. This allows for the validation of the top level design and performance allocation before building up the development team. The experience on several ESD programs indicates that with existing practice development specifications are not completed until 10-15 months after contract award. This is a true measure of the time needed for validating top level designs (See Figure 13-8).

Over time the schedule for the PDR has been moved up and is now generally six months after contract award. What do all those people do while the top level design is being developed? They start into detailed design and coding in order to meet schedule. This premature design and code must often be redone. The changes and uncertainties lead to frustration and poor morale for the team.

In updating his COCOMO model for Ada implications, Barry Boehm has suggested a



**Fig. 13-8 Experience Example**

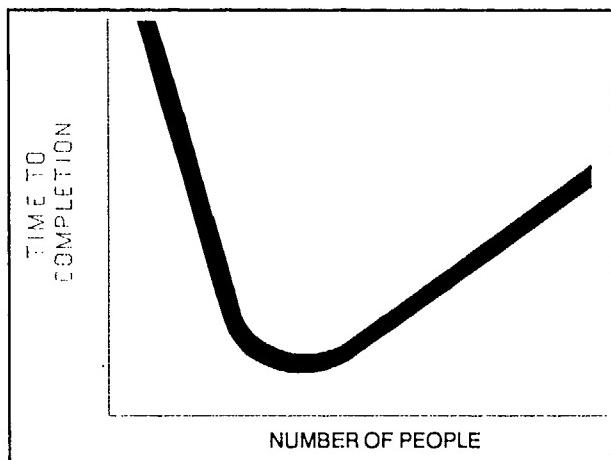


Fig. 13-9 Productivity

schedule similar to the one shown in Figure 13-7. He allows time before the PDR to compile the PDL statements, validate interfaces, and perform semantic checks. The longer time produces a more orderly process with less breakage and rework.

### 13.6 TEAM SIZE AND MANAGEMENT

Large, complex software jobs often require hundreds of people. An article [5] by the people who managed Sidewinder, a very successful air-to-air missile, addresses the size and behavior of research and engineering teams. It points out that the nature of complex acquisitions is such that the assignment of too few people may require an infinite time to complete the job. On the other hand, the assignment of additional engineering personnel above a certain level may not only proportionately reduce total time, but may, in fact, increase the total time to accomplishment (See Figure 13-9).

The author of the referenced article recalls being asked in grade school to solve the following problem: "If two men can dig a well in eight hours, how long does it take four men to dig the same well". He "... can recall being haunted by the suspicion that perhaps there was only room down the well for two men; in which case the extra two men might have

some difficulty in usefully contributing". A similar phenomenon has been reported by Brooks in *The Mythical Man-Month* [6].

If the schedule for a previous job was longer than desired as the result of over-staffing, the tendency may be to add more people to improve the schedule on the next job. This will happen if the inter-dependent nature of the tasks and the over-staffing are not understood. Care must be taken in using past experience to set objectives for future jobs.

The size job a given organization can handle is not only a function of the available number of qualified and experienced personnel. To some extent, jobs can be balanced with resources. When the job grows in size, complexity, and interdependence, the developer must provide appropriate infrastructures (i.e., organization and documentation) to support technical interchange, progress reporting, and increased span of control (See Figure 13-10). If a large job is broken into pieces to get it accomplished, a mechanism must be devised for pulling it back together again.

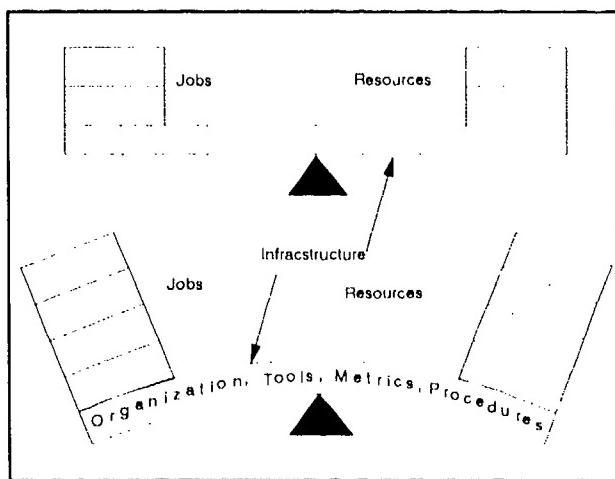


Fig. 13-10 Management

Failures often occur when firms take on larger jobs than they have previously undertaken. They generally use a small team and face-to-face communications for coordination and control. When the number of people grows,

there are no established procedures, tools or documentation to support the necessary technical and management interchanges.

### **13.7 ASSESSING PERFORMANCE**

There are a number of new techniques for assessing a contractor's experience, tools and procedures. Visits to contractor facilities by a team of experienced government software personnel during source selections are being used. The team assesses and verifies contractor experience, maturity of procedures, quality management capabilities and job understanding. At ESD these teams are called "Greybeards." At the Aeronautical Systems Division, they are called "Capability/Capacity Review Teams" (See Chapter 8). Work at the Software Engineering Institute and at MITRE Corporation [7] has led to a process for assessing the software engineering capability of contractors. At ESD a short software engineering exercise has been designed to audit the contractor's use of proposed tools and procedures.

In addition, a set of metrics has been developed for use by the contractor during the software development process as an aid visibility and control [8]. A number of contracts now require the use and reporting of metrics. The cost for this should not be high since a competent contractor normally generates metrics for his own internal use.

### **13.8 MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE**

Software development and acquisition is difficult and will remain so for several years. Actions are required to overcome the roadblocks associated with the present process.

**Choose a good contractor.** During source selection use in-plant inspections (Grey-

beards), software exercises, and contractor capability assessment techniques to aid the selection process. Include the support requirements for these activities in the RFP.

**Allow time for design and iteration.** Don't baseline without some experience at lower levels of design.

**Make maximum use of off-the-shelf software.** Try to make the job smaller and more manageable. Change the requirements for well defined, less critical functions to fit with available packages.

**Breadboard and prototype the difficult parts of the job.** Prototypes help the user see what he is getting and help the developer understand implementation difficulties. Prototypes generally are not suitable for the end product unless they have been especially designed for that purpose.

**Schedule preliminary design reviews consistent with the degree of validation.** Don't force contractor top level designs to be accomplished in the proposal stage. Allow time to validate the top level design.

**Apply discipline and new tools.** Contractors should have a good software development plan, established procedures, and tools to aid development, configuration management, test generation, and status keeping.

**Require metrics for visibility and control.** The contractor should have his own means for determining status and the rate of progress. Trends are the basis for predicting future progress. Impose the requirement to generate and use metrics on the contractor.

**Have more than one phase.** Have a place to put new requirements instead of impacting ongoing efforts. Use the second phase to deal

with shortfalls in the first phase. Often the user no longer wants the capabilities which were thought desirable early in the process.

**Deliver in useful increments.** Try to keep the deliveries consistent with the degree of knowledge one has developed of requirements and implementation difficulties. To avoid retraining, design user interfaces so that they don't change with each increment.

**Maintain schedule; deliver, then add.** Every schedule change opens the door to new requirements. Delivery provides performance feedback--necessary for further evolution.

### 13.9 REFERENCES

1. Boehm, Barry W., *Software Engineering Economics*, Prentice Hall, 1981.
2. Roberts, Alan J., "Some Software Implications of System Acquisition," *Signal Magazine*, July 1982, pages 19-25.
3. Devenney, Capt. Thomas J., "An Exploratory Study of Software Cost Estimat-

ing at the Electronic Systems Division," Masters Thesis, Air Force Institute of Technology, July 1976.

4. Roberts, Alan J., "ESD System Acquisition Practices - Design Reviews," The MITRE Corporation, Internal Memo, May 1977.
5. Kirschner, R. B., "The Size of Research and Engineering Teams," *Proceedings of the 11th National Conference on the Administration of Research*, Pennsylvania State University Press, September 1957.
6. Brooks, F. P., *The Mythical Man Month*, Addison-Wesley, 1975.
7. "A Method for Assessing the Software Engineering Capability of Contractors," Software Engineering Institute, ESD-TR-87-186, CMU/SEI-87-TR-23, 23 September 1987.
8. Schultz, Herman P., *Software Management Metrics*, ESD-TR-88-011, May 1988.

# APPENDIX A

---

## LIST OF ACRONYMS

<b>ACVC</b>	Ada Compiler Validation Capability	<b>CI</b>	Configuration Item
<b>ADAMAT</b>	Ada Measurement & Analysis Tool	<b>CIDS</b>	Critical Item Development Spec
<b>ADP</b>	Automatic Data Processing	<b>CM</b>	Configuration Management
<b>AFSCP</b>	Air Force System Command Pamphlet	<b>CMP</b>	Configuration Management Plan
<b>AFLC</b>	Air Force Logistics Command	<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Unit
<b>AFB</b>	Air Force Base	<b>CRISD</b>	Computer Resources Integrated Support Document
<b>AFR</b>	Air Force Regulation	<b>CRWG</b>	Computer Resources Working Group
<b>AIS</b>	Automated Information Systems	<b>CSC</b>	Computer Software Component
<b>AJPO</b>	Ada Joint Program Office	<b>CSCI</b>	Computer Software Configuration Item
<b>AMC</b>	Army Materiel Command	<b>CSOM</b>	Computer System Operator's Manual
<b>ANSI</b>	American National Standards Institute	<b>CSU</b>	Computer Software Unit
<b>APSE</b>	Ada Programming Support Environment	<b>CRLCMP</b>	Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan
<b>ASCII</b>	American Standard Code for Information Interchange		
<b>ASDP</b>	Aeronautical Systems Division Pamphlet	<b>CRWG</b>	Computer Resources Working Group
<b>ATE</b>	Automatic Test Equipment	<b>DARCOM</b>	U.S.Army Material Development & Readiness Command
<b>ATA</b>	Advanced Tactical Aircraft	<b>DCMC</b>	Defense Contract Management Command
<b>ATF</b>	Advanced Tactical Fighter	<b>DCP</b>	Decision Coordination Paper
<b>ATVS</b>	Ada Test and Verification System	<b>DID</b>	Data Item Description
<b>AVF</b>	Ada Validation Facility	<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>AVO</b>	Ada Validation Organization	<b>DODD</b>	Department of Defense Directive
<b>BIT</b>	Built-in-test	<b>DOD-STD</b>	Department of Defense Standard
<b>BITE</b>	Built-in-test Equipment	<b>DSB</b>	Defense Science Board
<b>CAD/CAM</b>	Computer Aided Design/Computer Aided Manufacturing	<b>DT&amp;E</b>	Developmental Test and Evaluation
<b>CET</b>	Capability Evaluation Team	<b>D/V</b>	Demonstration and Validation
<b>CCB</b>	Configuration Control Board	<b>ECP</b>	Engineering Change Proposal
<b>CDR</b>	Critical Design Review	<b>ECR</b>	Embedded Computer Resources
<b>CDRL</b>	Contract Data Requirements List	<b>EPROM</b>	Erasable Programmable ROM
<b>CE</b>	Concept Exploration	<b>EEPROM</b>	Electrically Eraseable PROM
<b>CLIN</b>	Contract Line Item Number	<b>ESD</b>	Electronic Systems Division (USAF)

**Appendix A List of Acronyms**

<b>FAR</b>	Federal Acquisition Regulations	<b>PM</b>	Program Manager
<b>FCA</b>	Functional Configuration Audit	<b>PMD</b>	Program Management Directive
<b>FQR</b>	Formal Qualification Review	<b>PMP</b>	Program Management Plan
<b>FQT</b>	Formal Qualification Test	<b>PMRT</b>	Program Management Responsibility Transfer
<b>FSD</b>	Full Scale Development	<b>PO</b>	Program Office
<b>FSM</b>	Firmware Support Manual	<b>PROM</b>	Programmable Read Only Memory
<b>HOL</b>	Higher Order Language	<b>QA</b>	Quality Assurance
<b>HWCI</b>	Hardware Configuration Item		
<b>IC</b>	Integrated Circuit	<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>ICBM</b>	Inter-Continental Ballistic Missile	<b>R&amp;D</b>	Research and Development
<b>ICS</b>	Interpretative Computer Simulation	<b>RF</b>	Radio Frequency
<b>ICWG</b>	Interface Control Working Group	<b>RFP</b>	Request for Proposal
<b>IDD</b>	Interface Design Document	<b>ROM</b>	Read Only Memory
<b>IEEE</b>	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineering	<b>SCM</b>	System Concept Paper
<b>ILSP</b>	Integrated Logistics Support Plan	<b>SCP</b>	System Concept Paper
<b>INS</b>	Inertial Navigation System	<b>SCRB</b>	Software Configuration Review Board
<b>I/O</b>	Input/Output	<b>SDCCR</b>	Software Development Capability Capacity Review
<b>IOC</b>	Initial Operating Capability	<b>SDF</b>	Software Development Folder (File)
<b>IR&amp;D</b>	Independent Research and Development	<b>SDL</b>	Software Development Library
<b>IRS</b>	Interface Requirement Specification	<b>SDP</b>	Software Development Plan
<b>ISA</b>	Instruction Set Architecture	<b>SDR</b>	System Design Review
<b>IV&amp;V</b>	Independent Verification and Validation	<b>SEI</b>	Software Engineering Institute
<b>JLC</b>	Joint Logistics Commanders	<b>SIL</b>	Systems Integration Laboratory
<b>KAPSE</b>	Kernal Ada Programming Support Environment	<b>SLOC</b>	Systems Integration Facility
<b>LAN</b>	Local Area Network	<b>SON</b>	Source Lines of Code
<b>MCCR</b>	Mission Critical Computer Resources	<b>SOW</b>	Statement of Need
<b>MIL-STD</b>	Military Standard	<b>SPD</b>	Statement of Work
<b>NCSC</b>	National Computer Security Center	<b>SPM</b>	System Program Director
<b>NDI</b>	Non-Developmental Item	<b>SPO</b>	Software Programmer's Manual
<b>NIST</b>	National Institute of Standards and Technology	<b>SPR</b>	System Program Office
<b>OFP</b>	Operational Flight Program	<b>SPS</b>	Software Problem Report
<b>O&amp;M</b>	Operation and Maintenance	<b>SRR</b>	Software Product Specification
<b>OMB</b>	Office of Management and Budget	<b>SRS</b>	Systems Requirements Review
<b>OOD</b>	Object Oriented Design	<b>SSA</b>	Software Requirements Specification
<b>OSD</b>	Office of Secretary of Defense	<b>SSA</b>	Software Support Activity
<b>OT&amp;E</b>	Operational Test and Evaluation	<b>SSAC</b>	Source Selection Authority
<b>PC</b>	Personal Computer	<b>SSEB</b>	Source Selection Advisory Council
<b>PCA</b>	Physical Configuration Audit	<b>SSDD</b>	Source Selection Evaluation Board
<b>PDL</b>	Program Design Language	<b>SSS</b>	System/Segment Design Document
<b>PDR</b>	Preliminary Design Review	<b>SSR</b>	Source Selection Plan
<b>PDSS</b>	Post-Deployment Software Support	<b>SSS</b>	Software Specification Review
<b>PIDS</b>	Prime Item Development Spec	<b>STARS</b>	System/Segment Specification
		<b>STD</b>	Software Technology for Adaptable Reliable Systems
		<b>STE</b>	Standard
		<b>STP</b>	Special Test Equipment
		<b>STR</b>	Software Test Plan
		<b>SUM</b>	Software Test Report
		<b>S/W</b>	Software User's Manual
			Software

**Appendix A List of Acronyms**

<b>TADSTAND</b>	Tactical Digital Systems Standard	<b>UDF</b>	Unit Development Folder
<b>T&amp;E</b>	Test and Evaluation	<b>VDD</b>	Version Description Document
<b>TEMP</b>	Test and Evaluation Master Plan	<b>VHSIC</b>	Very High Speed Integrated Circuit
<b>TO</b>	Technical Order		
<b>TPS</b>	Test Program Set		
<b>TRR</b>	Test Readiness Review	<b>WBS</b>	Work Breakdown Structure

## APPENDIX B

---

### GLOSSARY OF TERMS

**Address**

Specifies the location of word, data or instruction in memory.

**Allocated Baseline**

The development specification which defines performance requirements for each CSCI.

**Analog**

Being or relating to a mechanism in which data is represented by continuously variable physical quantities [1].

**Assembler**

A computer program that translates assembly language instructions into machine language. Typically one assembly language instruction is translated into one corresponding machine language instruction. Both the assembly and machine languages are unique to a particular computer.

**Assembly Language**

Assembly language allow the use of abbreviated names (mnemonics) for machine

language instructions and operands in place of binary (0s and 1s) machine codes.

**Bit**

A binary digit whose value is either a 1 or a 0.

**Built-in Test Equipment (BITE)**

Any device permanently mounted in the prime equipment and used for the express purpose of testing the prime equipment, either independently or in association with external test equipment.

**Byte**

Eight (8) bits.

**Buss**

See Digital Data Buss

**Central Processing Unit (CPU)**

Fetches, decodes and executes the instructions of the computer program. The major determinant of a computer's execution speed. Sometimes called the "engine".

**Compilation or Compiling**

The translation process accomplished by a compiler.

**Compiler**

A computer program which translates a HOL into machine language. The HOL statements are called source code and the output of the compiler is called object code.

**Component**

A Computer Software Component (CSC) is a distinct part of a computer software configuration item (CSCI). CSCs may be further decomposed into other CSCs and Computer Software Units (CSUs).

**Computer Program**

A series of instructions or statements in a form acceptable to computer equipment and designed to cause the execution of an operation or series of operations. Computer programs include such items as operating systems, assemblers, compilers, interpreters, data management systems, utility programs, and maintenance or diagnostic programs. They also include application programs such as payroll, inventory control, operational flight, strategic, tactical, automatic test, crew simulator, and engineering analysis programs. Computer programs may be either machine-dependent or machine-independent, and may be general purpose in nature or designed to satisfy the requirements of a specialized process or particular users.

**Debugging**

The process of locating and eliminating errors that have been shown to exist in a computer program.

**Digital Data Buss**

A group of circuits and interconnections between two or more devices, such as between the CPU and memory or between the com-

puter and external devices, that provide a communication path for digital data.

**Error Message**

A message printed out by a computer after detecting a programming error.

**Emulator**

A combination of computer programs and computer hardware that mimic the instructions and execution speed of another computer or system.

**Executive**

The operating system in an avionics suite.

**Expert Systems**

Systems that utilize artificial intelligence (AI) to perform their functions.

**Firmware**

Computer programs and data that have been written into read only memories (ROMs).

**Formal Qualification Review (FQR)**

A system level configuration audit conducted after system testing is completed to ensure that the performance requirements of the system specification have been met.

**Functional Baseline**

The system requirements. Provides basis for contracting and controlling the system design.

**Functional Configuration Audit (FCA)**

The formal examination of test data to determine the functional characteristics of a CSCI, prior to acceptance, to verify that the item has achieved the performance specified in its functional or allocated configuration identification.

**Higher Order Language (HOL)**

Higher order languages have been developed in order to make writing and understanding

programs easier. In a HOL, the program is written in a series of statements which typically resemble mathematical formulas or English expressions.

### **Host Computer**

The computer on which a compiler executes.

### **Initial Operating Capability (IOC)**

The first capability attainment to employ effectively a weapon system, an item of equipment, or system of approved characteristics, and which is manned or operated by a trained, equipped, and supported military unit.

### **Integrated Circuit (IC)**

Tiny complex of electronic components and their connections that is produced in or on a small slice of material such as silicon [1]. The basic building blocks of modern electronics.

### **Intermediate Language**

An assembly-like language used by a compiler as an interim step in the process of compilation.

### **Interpreter**

A computer program that converts and executes a HOL source program statement directly into machine language, one statement at a time.

### **Linker**

A computer program that links or ties together programs that have been separately compiled or assembled.

### **Loader**

The computer program that loads the computer program into memory.

### **Machine Language**

The binary codes (0s and 1s) which are understood directly by a computer. A typical machine language instruction consists of an

operation code (or op-code) and one or more operand fields. The operation code specifies the computer function (e.g., add, subtract, test for zero) to be performed while the operand fields specify where in the computer the data for that function is located.

### **Maintainability**

The ability of an item to be retained in or restored to specified condition when maintenance is performed by personnel having specified skill levels, using prescribed procedures, resources, and equipment at each prescribed level of maintenance and repair.

### **Microprocessor**

A Central Processing Unit (CPU) constructed from one large scale integration device or chip.

### **Model**

A model is a representation of an actual or conceptual system that involves mathematics, logical expressions, or computer simulations that can be used to predict how the system might perform or survive under various conditions of in a range of hostile environments.

### **Module**

See Unit

### **Module Testing**

The execution of a single module to determine its correctness before the module is combined or integrated with other modules.

### **Mnemonic**

Symbolic names for machine language instructions which allow a programmer to generate programs in assembly language without having to use binary codes.

### **Operating System**

A computer program that controls the execution of other computer programs in a com-

**puter.** It schedules the time when computer programs are run, assigns memory, and provides diagnostic and accounting information about a program's execution.

**Patching**

Making changes to the machine code (object code) representation of a computer program and by-passing the compiler.

**Regression Testing**

The testing of a program to confirm that functions, that were previously performed correctly, continue to perform correctly after a change has been made.

**Rehosting**

Modifying a computer program so that it operates on a different host computer.

**Reliability**

The probability that an item will perform its intended function for a specified interval under stated conditions.

**Retargeting**

Modifying a compiler so that it generates object code for a different target computer.

**Simulation**

A simulation is a method for implementing a model. It is the process of conducting experiments with a model to understand system-behavior under selected conditions or of evaluating various system operational strategies within the limits imposed by developmental or operational criteria. Simulation may include the use of analog or digital devices, laboratory models, or "testbed" sites.

**Simulator**

A generic term used to describe a family of equipment used to represent threat weapon systems in development testing, operational

testing and training. A threat simulator has one or more characteristics which, when detected by human senses or man-made sensors, provide the appearance of an actual threat weapon system with a prescribed degree of fidelity.

**Software**

The combination of computer programs or instructions required to cause the computer hardware to perform a certain task or tasks.

**Stub**

A stub takes the place of a module that has not yet been coded or tested.

**Syntax**

The rules for writing computer programs in a particular programming language.

**Syntax Error**

A syntax error is generated when a programmer has violated the rules of a particular programming language.

**Target Computer**

The computer for which the compiler generates object code.

**Testbeds**

A system representation consisting partially of actual hardware and/or software, and partially of computer models or prototype hardware and/or software.

**Test Program Set (TPS)**

Computer programs written in a HOL, usually ATLAS, used in conjunction with automatic test equipment (ATE) to isolate a failed electronic subsystem or component. TPSs typically are used to generate and inject test patterns into digital circuit boards or electronic "black boxes". Modern electronic components are too complex to be manually tested.

**Unit**

A Computer Software Unit (CSU) is the smallest testable element specified in a Computer Software Component (CSC).

**Validation**

The process of confirming that the software (i.e., documentation and computer program) satisfies all user requirements when operating in the user's environment.

**Verification**

The process of confirming that the products of each software development phase (e.g., requirements analysis, design, coding, testing) are complete, correct, and consistent with respect to the products of the previous phase.

**Word**

A data packet of information for the computer. It is usually composed of many bits. The length of a computer word typically ranges from 8 bits for microprocessors to 64 or more bits for the larger computers. The memory of a computer is divided into segments called words.

**REFERENCES**

1. Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary, Merriam-Webster Inc., Springfield, MA, 1984.

# APPENDIX C

---

## OUTLINE OF PROGRAM MANAGEMENT PLAN

Table C-1 shows a typical outline of a Program Management Plan (PMP) based on AFR 800-2, *Acquisition Program Management*, Attachment 3. The other services use a similar

1	Program Summary and Authorization
*	2 Intelligence
*	3 Program Management
*	4 Systems Engineering and Configuration
*	5 Test and Evaluation
6	Information Systems
7	Operations
8	Civil Engineering
9	Logistics
*	10 Manpower and Organization
11	Personnel Training
12	Security
*	13 Directives, Specifications, & Standards
*	Addresses MCCR

**Table C-1 PMP Outline**

outline. Note that six of the sections must address mission critical computer resources (MCCR). Depending on the program, there may be other sections that may also need to address software. The discussion that follows,

however, will be limited to those sections which must address MCCR.

### C.1 INTELLIGENCE (Sect 2)

This section includes:

(a) **Identification of the Threat.** This paragraph should consist of a listing of all relevant threats that have been obtained from the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) or other DOD or armed service agency. Since software will probably be the major player in countering these threats, it is important that the entire spectrum of threats be addressed.

(b) **Identification of Relevant Foreign Technology.** Since the U.S. is no longer the undisputed world leader in technology, it is important that foreign technology, especially that of our allies, be examined to determine whether any of it can be used in the proposed system. Our European allies, for example, have embraced Ada, the DOD standard computer language, with fervor and have made significant strides in the area of Ada software

tools. Some of these tools, particularly compilers and Ada code analyzers could be useful.

## **C.2 PROGRAM MANAGEMENT (Sect 3)**

This section provides a description of the objectives and program strategy (or approach) in somewhat more detail than Section 1. At a minimum, the schedules contained in this section should include the following:

- (a) Operational system software development schedules;
- (b) Training schedules including the procurement and development of all maintenance and operational crew trainers;
- (c) Support equipment development and delivery schedule including ATE and other software intensive special test equipment;
- (d) Development and delivery schedule for the TPSs associated with the ATE.

## **C.3 SYSTEMS ENGINEERING & CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT (Sect 4)**

This section should describe when and how the functions of hardware and software configuration management will be accomplished to include the Configuration Control Board (CCB) and the Software CCB.

## **C.4 TEST AND EVALUATION (Sect 5)**

This section addresses DT&E and OT&E schedules including the overall software test and integration schedules. It also describes the major software support tools and major test facilities required.

## **C.5 MANPOWER AND ORGANIZATION (Sect 10)**

This section describes the organization of the program office and summarize the relationships and roles of other military and government agencies and laboratories. In particular, it describes the software organization and its relation to the other program office organizations. It also addresses the required software manpower and skill levels along with possible sources of key software personnel.

## **C.6 DIRECTIVES, SPECIFICATIONS, AND STANDARDS (Sect 13)**

This section lists all the directives, specifications, and standards that will be imposed on the program including those related to software and computers. For example, if the data bus standard, MIL-STD-1553B, or the Ada programming language standard, MIL-STD-1815, is inappropriate, the reasons why it is so should be stated in this section and the waiver process initiated.

# APPENDIX D

---

## TEST AND EVALUATION MASTER PLAN OUTLINE

The Test and Evaluation Master Plan (TEMP) is a key program management document whose primary purpose is to describe all the necessary system Developmental Test and Evaluation (DT&E) and Operational Test and Evaluation (OT&E). It relates program schedules, test management structure and required resources to critical operational issues, critical technical characteristics, required operational characteristics, evaluation criteria and decision milestones. The formal outline for the TEMP is given in DOD Directive 5000.3-M-1 and it is shown in Table D-1. The TEMP is broken up into five major sections and three appendices. Hardware and software thresholds are to be included in the

TEMP. It shall describe the physical hardware tests, software tests, systems tests, simulations, and any analyses needed to provide data not available through actual testing. In particular the following sections should specifically address MCCR issues:

### D.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION (Part I.2)

This section briefly describes the system design to include the following items:

(a) Key features and subsystems, both hardware and software, allowing the system to perform its required operational mission;

(b) Unique characteristics of the system or unique support concepts resulting in special test and analyses requirements such as threat simulations or other system simulators.

### D.2 CRITICAL TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Part I.3)

This section lists in matrix format the critical technical characteristics of the system that

PART I	SYSTEM DETAILS
PART II	PROGRAM SUMMARY
PART III	DT&E OUTLINE
PART IV	OT&E OUTLINE
PART V	T&E RESOURCE SUMMARY
APPENDIX A	BIBLIOGRAPHY
APPENDIX B	ACRONYMS
APPENDIX C	POINTS OF CONTACT
ANNEXES	(If Appropriate)

Table D-1 TEMP Outline

have been evaluated or will be evaluated during the remaining phases of development testing. For MCCR, this characteristics include: speed of calculation, memory utilization, throughput capability, reliability (growth), and response time.

### **D.3 DEVELOPMENTAL TEST AND EVALUATION OVERVIEW (Part III.1)**

This section of the TEMP how the planned (or accomplished) DT&E will verify the status of the engineering design, verify that design risks have been minimized, and substantiate the achievement of technical performance. Specifically the narrative should identify the degree to which system hardware and software design has stabilized so as to reduce manufacturing and production uncertainties.

### **D.4 SOFTWARE TEST AND EVALUATION (Part III.4.C)**

In this section all software testing of MCCR required to demonstrate a quality product, including post-milestone III updates as called out in DOD Directive 5000.3-M-3, *Software Test and Evaluation Manual* and DOD Directive 5000.29, *Management of Computer Resources in Major Defense Systems*.

### **D.5 OT&E EVENTS, SCOPE OF TESTING, AND SCENARIOS (Part V)**

This section should identify planned sources of information (e.g., development testing, modeling and simulations) that may be used by the operational test agency to supplement this phase of OT&E. Whenever models and simulations are to be used, the rationale for their credible use should be given.

### **D.6 TEST ARTICLES (Part V.1.a)**

This section should identify the actual number and timing requirements for all test articles, including key support equipment and technical information required for testing of each phase. If key subsystems (components, assemblies, subassemblies or software modules) are to be tested individually, before being tested in the final system configuration, identify each subsystem in the TEMP and the quantity required.

### **D.7 THREAT SYSTEMS/SIMULATORS (Part V.1.d)**

This section should identify the type, number and availability requirements for all threat systems/simulators. It should also compare the requirements for threat systems/simulators with available and projected assets and their capabilities. Major shortfalls should be highlighted.

### **D.8 SIMULATIONS, MODELS AND TESTBEDS (Part V.1.g)**

This section should identify the system simulations required, including computer-driven simulation models and hardware-in-the-loop testbeds. The rationale for their credible use or application must be explained before their use.

### **D.9 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS (Part V.1.h)**

This section should discuss requirements for any significant non-instrumentation capabilities and resources such as special data processing and special databases

# **APPENDIX E**

---

## **INTEGRATED LOGISTICS SUPPORT PLAN (ILSP) OUTLINE**

Table E-1 shows a typical outline of an ILSP. Guidance for this document is found in MIL-STD-1369A, *Integrated Logistics Support Program Requirements (Final Draft)*. The following sections should address Mission Critical Computer Resources (MCCR).

### **E.1 MAINTENANCE CONCEPT**

This section normally describes the three traditional levels of maintenance: organizational or field level maintenance, intermediate level maintenance, and depot level maintenance. Since modern weapon systems are heavily dependent on electronics, this section will discuss the types and number of automatic test equipment (ATE) contemplated for the three levels of support; the associated Test Program Sets (TPS) which are used in conjunction with the ATE to isolate failed electronics components; and any other computer and software-dependent piece of calibration or test equipment.

<p><b>SECTION I: GENERAL</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- System Description (GFE and associated SE)</li> <li>- Program Management Organization and Responsibilities</li> <li>- Applicable Documentation</li> </ul> <p><b>SECTION II: GOALS AND STRATEGY</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Operation and Organization Concept</li> <li>- Maintenance Concept</li> <li>- System Readiness Objectives</li> <li>- Logistics Acquisition Strategy</li> <li>- LSA Scope and Tasks</li> <li>- Supportability T&amp;E Concepts/Issues</li> <li>- ILS Elements</li> <li>- Support Funds</li> <li>- Post Fielding Assessment</li> </ul> <p><b>SECTION III: ILS MILESTONES SCHEDULE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ILS Comparison to Program Milestones</li> <li>- ILS Elements (GFE and associated SE)</li> <li>- Assignments, Responsibilities and Events</li> </ul>
---

**Table E-1 ILSP Outline**

## **E.2 LOGISTICS ACQUISITION STRATEGY**

This section summarizes the strategy described in the Acquisition Plan. For software and computers, this section should describe how the logistics support software will be acquired. For example, who will develop the ATE and TPSs: the prime developer, a subcontractor, or another government agency? Will the program office delegate the responsibility for acquiring the ATE and TPSs to another government agency (as it is often done in the Air Force)? Bear in mind that development by anyone other than the prime contractor involves additional contractual considerations (e.g., separate RFPs, source selections, and contracts). How will calibration and special logistics support and test equipment be acquired?

## **E.3 SUPPORTABILITY T&E CONCEPTS/ISSUES**

This section describes the planned supportability test and evaluation concept, its scope and objectives. In particular, it addresses test and evaluation of built-in or supporting automatic operating, testing, and maintenance equipment, and associated software.

## **E.4 ILS ELEMENTS**

This section addresses all the ILS elements tailored to each specific phase of the acquisition. Two software intensive areas are training

and training devices and computer resources support.

### **E.4.1 Training and Training Devices**

This section describes how training and training devices requirements are met and who is responsible for meeting these requirements. Since this usually requires complex and computer-intensive trainers, it should identify the various types and numbers of trainers, their anticipated location, and availability dates. Examples of some of the potential trainers required are: avionics maintenance trainers, weapons loading trainers, and ATE trainers.

### **E.4.2 Computer Resources Support**

This section describes the facilities, hardware, software, documentation, manpower, and personnel needed to operate and support the embedded computer systems. Particular attention should be paid to the ATE and the associated TPSs required to isolate problems in Line Replaceable Units (LRUs) and electronic circuit cards. Organic maintenance and support cannot be initiated until the ATE and the TPSs are delivered. This section should also describe the plans for determining firmware and software support and Post Deployment Software Support (PDSS) procedures, requirements, and responsibilities. It should identify the requirement for preparation of a Computer Resources Life Cycle Management Plan (CRLCMP) as an annex to the ILSP.

## APPENDIX F

---

### COMPUTER RESOURCES LIFE CYCLE MANAGEMENT PLAN (CRLCMP) OUTLINE

Table F-1 shows the CRLCMP format found in Attachment 11 of AFR 800-14, *Life Cycle Management of Computer Resources in Systems*. Although the other services do not have a standard format, the formats used are very similar.

#### F.1 INTRODUCTION

This section states the purpose of the CRLCMP, lists the approved system nomenclature, and lists the appropriate requirements documents such as the Statement of Need (SON) and the System Operational Concept (SOC).

#### F.2 SYSTEM CONCEPTS

This section describes the system operational and support concepts. It briefly describes the mission of the system with emphasis on computer resources; identifies the system functions which are expected to require frequent changes to accommodate the operational environment; and describes the hardware sup-

port concept for the system and for the software.

#### F.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

States the purpose of the operational system and describes how the computer resources relate to the overall operational system. Identifies and describes the characteristics and functions of the processors in the system and the functions to be implemented in software or firmware.

#### F.4 COMPUTER RESOURCES DESIGN

This section addresses the following:

- (a) **System Architecture and Design** - Identifies the required hardware and software architectures for the system.
- (b) **Product Improvements** - Identifies parts of the system which will most likely require future expansion (e.g., memory size, processing capacity, number of interfaces).

SECT	SUBJECT	SECT	SUBJECT
1.	Introduction a. Overview b. Scope and Applicability c. References	7.	Documentation a. Types of Documents b. Data Rights c. Data Management
2.	Systems Concept a. Operational Concept b. Support Concepts	8.	Acquisition Management Practices a. Software Development Strategy b. Boards and Committees c. Configuration Management d. Documentation Review or Approval e. Reviews and Audits f. Test and Evaluation g. Software Quality h. Security
3.	System Description a. Overview b. Computer Hardware c. Computer Software	9.	Transition Management Practices a. Configuration Management b. Turnover c. Support During Transition d. Transfer
4.	Computer Resources Design a. System Architecture and Integration b. Product Improvements c. Software Development Tools d. Reusability e. Interoperability f. Additional Design Constraints	10.	Deployment Management Practices a. Boards and Committees b. Configuration Management c. Security d. Training
5.	Organizational Roles a. Implementing Command b. Supporting Command c. Operating Command d. Using Command (If Applicable) e. Participating Commands f. Other Agencies	11.	Schedules a. Major Milestones b. Contract Delivery Schedule c. Support Capabilities
6.	Resources a. Personnel b. Facilities c. Training d. Hardware e. Software f. Integrated Logistics Support	Appendices	
		A	Acronyms and Abbreviations
		B	Glossary of Terms
		C	List of Key Personnel
		D	CRWG Charter
		E	Risk Management Plan
		F	Detailed System Description
		G	Security Assistance

Table F-1 CRLCMP Outline

(c) **Software Development Tools** - Identifies and describes the software development tools and their usage environment. Indicates whether they are GFE, GFP, commercially available or contractor developed.

(d) **Reusability** - Identifies and briefly describes any developed or soon to be developed software, tools, environments, or facilities that may apply to other current or future weapon systems.

(e) **Interoperability** - Briefly describes any interoperability requirements for the system that are implemented in computer resources.

(f) **Additional Design Constraints** - Briefly describes additional performance and support constraints and considerations which must be translated into specified requirements.

## F.5 ORGANIZATION ROLES

This section describes the functional relationships among the implementing command, the supporting command, the operating command, and any other participating command or government agency.

## F.6 RESOURCES

This section identifies the personnel, facilities, training, hardware, software, and integrated logistics support requirements for the system.

## F.7 DOCUMENTATION

This section summarizes the documentation requirements, identifies the government's software data rights, and describes the plans and procedures for managing the data.

## F.8 ACQUISITION MANAGEMENT PRACTICES

This section discusses the software development strategy; identifies configuration control boards and their interfaces to other boards or committees; identifies the existing directives which will govern configuration management activities; identifies the schedule and participating organizations for computer resource related reviews and audits; and describes the schedule and par-

ticipating organizations for test and evaluation of computer resources.

## F.9 TRANSITION MANAGEMENT PRACTICES

This section discusses the procedures and directives which will govern configuration management and support during and after the system is transferred from the developing organization to the using and supporting organizations.

## F.10 DEPLOYMENT MANAGEMENT PRACTICES

This section identifies the boards and committees which are created for the management of computer resources during the acquisition phase; identifies the existing directives governing security for the system; and describes the activities and major milestones associated with training personnel for operating and supporting the system.

## F.11 SCHEDULES

This section identifies the major milestones associated with the acquisition, transition, and support schedules of the system; identifies the schedules associated with contract deliverables; and identifies the schedule for the initial operating capability for the primary computer resource support capabilities.

## F.12 APPENDICES

The appendices will contain the complete charter for the Computer Resources Working Group (CRWG) as well as the other items indicated in the CRLCMP outline of Table F-1. It is extremely important that the program manager carefully review the CRWG charter prior to endorsing it. The CRWG

**Appendix F CRLCMP Outline**

must reflect the program manager's objectives and philosophy. Failure of the program manager to carefully review this charter can lead to misunderstandings and/or wasted ef-

forts later in the program. In particular the responsibilities of all the CRWG organizations must be clearly spelled out to minimize turf battles.

# **APPENDIX G**

---

## **SOURCE SELECTION PLAN**

Table G-1 shows an outline of a Source Selection Plan (SSP) as given in AFR 70-15, *Source Selection Policy and Procedures*. The other services use a similar format. The following sections that should address mission critical computer resources.

### **G.1 SOURCE SELECTION ORGANIZATION (Sect 2)**

This section describes the Source Selection Authority (SSA), the Source Selection Advisory Counsel (SSAC), and the Source Selection Evaluation Board (SSEB) organizations and lists recommended key members by name, or by position or functional area. It must also specify other government organizations that will be represented on the SSAC and SSEB, and include an estimate of the total

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | Introduction                  |
| 2 | Source Selection Organization |
| 3 | Screening Criteria            |
| 4 | Evaluation Process            |
| 5 | Evaluation Criteria           |
| 6 | Acquisition Strategy          |
| 7 | Schedule of Events            |

**Table G-1 SSP Outline**

number of personnel who will form the membership, including any advisors.

It is important that the key software person on the SSEB be very knowledgeable about software acquisition. Finding this individual will not be easy since knowledgeable, senior software individuals are not always readily available. If this individual is a member of the program office, then his or her availability will not be a problem. However, if no such individual can be found within the program office, searching for that individual must become a matter of high priority.

If the program office is newly formed and without a knowledgeable software individual, the program manager must look to either other program offices, laboratories, or other external organizations for an individual who can spend one to three months (a typical duration period for a source selection) away from his or her current job. The longer the source selection, the more difficult it will be to find this individual. Ideally the senior software person in the source selection should be the

same individual who will be managing the effort once a developer is selected. Since the selection of the right software developer is paramount to the success of the entire program, finding a knowledgeable software evaluator should be the number one priority of the program manager.

## **G.2 SCREENING CRITERIA (Sect 3)**

This section describes the criteria to be used to select prospective sources. The screening criteria must be developed prior to the official publication of the planned procurement effort in the Commerce Business Daily (CBD). It will be used by procurement personnel to determine potential sources based on the letters of interest received in response to the CBD announcement. Contractors who have expressed interest and satisfy the screening criteria will receive copies of the proposal package. Even if a contractor has failed to satisfy the screening criteria, it may still receive a copy of the proposal if it requests it. Ordinarily, however, not too many contractors wish to pursue a procurement in which the government doesn't feel it is competitive.

The screening criteria must include the requirement that the sources solicited will have (inherently or by subcontracting or teaming arrangements) the management, financial, technical expertise, and security clearances to design and develop the system software.

## **G.3 EVALUATION CRITERIA (Sect 5)**

This section describes the specific evaluation criteria which will be used to judge all of the proposals. In generating the evaluation criteria, the program office must ensure that criteria is not overly restrictive or biased towards a particular approach or technology. Remember that the developer should have the latitude to select both the technology and

approach that best satisfies the stated requirements. Unless there are valid reasons for forcing the contractor to pursue a particular path, such as compatibility with an existing system, the evaluation criteria should reflect the general requirements and not a particular design.

## **G.4 ACQUISITION STRATEGY (Sect 6)**

This section will include a summary of the acquisition strategy, including type of contract(s) proposed, the incentives contemplated, milestones demonstrations intended, and special contract clauses to be used.

A strategy that may be used is to make the prime contractor responsible for developing all of the system software or subcontracting it out. Another approach may be to direct the prime contractor to subcontract critical portions of the software to specialized software houses. For example, a defensive avionics subsystem may be subcontracted out to a subcontractor specializing in electronic warfare systems.

With the increasing role played by digital electronics subsystems, an important segment of software is the development of Test Program Sets (TPS) for automatic test equipment (ATE). Since TPS development is a highly specialized business, a prime contractor normally does not have the expertise to develop them. Even if he did, it is not prudent to put so many software eggs in one basket. It may be highly advisable to contract separately for TPS development. This will mean a separate source selection effort.

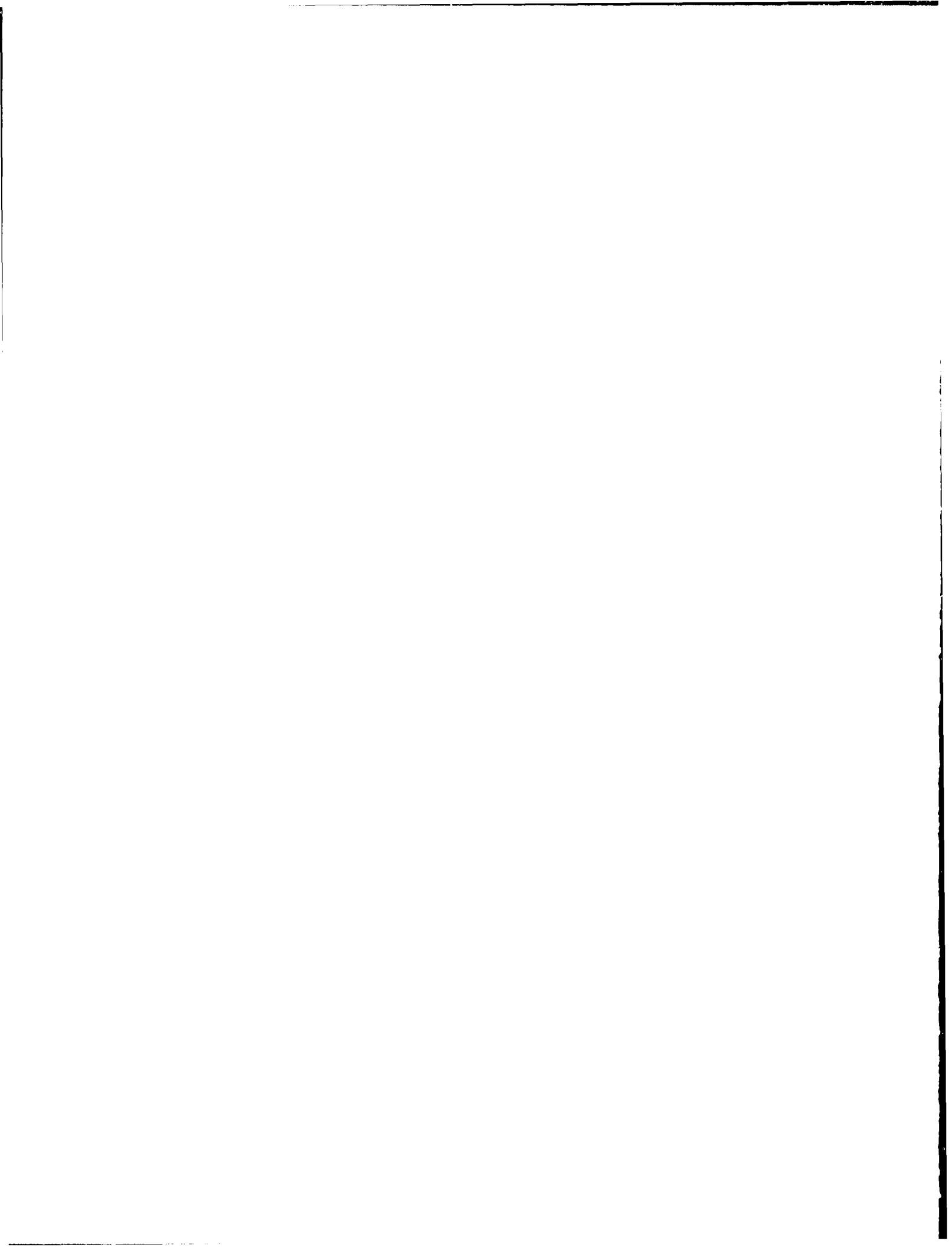
Other specialized software areas are trainers and simulators. Once again it may be prudent to contract these efforts separately. For a major simulator such as a weapon systems

trainer, the program office may delegate this responsibility to another organization or program office.

Whatever strategy is selected, the most likely approach will involve more than one contractor. It is important that the proposal clearly state the government's preference so that the

contractors include in their proposals the cost of coordinating with other contractors.

Finally this section should state whether the program office will use an Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V) organization and their level of involvement with the software developers.



# **APPENDIX H**

---

## **SOFTWARE DATA ITEM DESCRIPTIONS (DIDs)**

### **SPECIFICATION DIDs**

DI-CMAN-80008A	System/Segment Specification (SSS)
DI-CMAN-80534	System Segment Design Document (SSDD)
DI-MCCR-80025A	Software Requirements Specification (SRS)
DI-MCCR-80026A	Interface Requirements Specification (IRS)
DI-MCCR-80029A	Software Product Specification (SPS)

### **DOCUMENTATION DIDs**

DI-MCCR-80030A	Software Development Plan (SDP)
DI-MCCR-80012A	Software Design Document (SDD)
DI-MCCR-80013A	Version Description Document (VDD)
DI-MCCR-80014A	Software Test Plan (STP)
DI-MCCR-80015A	Software Test Description (STD)
DI-MCCR-80017A	Software Test Report (STR)
DI-MCCR-80018A	Computer System's Operator's Manual (CSOM)
DI-MCCR-80019A	Software User's Manual (SUM)
DI-MCCR-80021A	Software Programmer's Manual (SPM)
DI-MCCR-80022A	Firmware Support Manual (FSM)
DI-MCCR-80024A	Computer Resources Support Document (CRISD)
DI-MCCR-80027A	Interface Design Document (ICD)

## **APPENDIX I**

---

### **APPLICABLE SOFTWARE MANAGEMENT REFERENCES**

<b>FAR Part 27</b>	Federal Acquisition Regulation
<b>FIRMR Part 201-7</b>	Federal Information Resource Management Regulation
<b>DFAR Part 270</b>	Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation
<b>DOD DIR 3405.1</b>	Computer Programming Language Policy
<b>DOD DIR 3405.2</b>	Use of Ada in Weapon Systems
<b>DOD DIR 5000.1</b>	Major System Acquisition
<b>DOD DIR 5000.2</b>	Defense Acquisition Program Procedures
<b>DOD DIR 5000.29</b>	Management of Computer Resources in Major Defense Systems
<b>DOD DIR 5000.40</b>	Responsibility for the Administration for the DOD ADP Program
<b>DOD DIR 5200.28</b>	Security Requirements for Automated Information Systems
<b>DOD FAR</b>	
<b>Sup 52-227</b>	Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software
<b>DOD FAR Sup 70</b>	Acquisition of Computer Resources
<b>DOD-STD-2167A</b>	Defense System Software Development
<b>DOD-STD-2168</b>	Defense System software Quality Program
<b>DOD-STD-5200.28</b>	Department of Defense Trusted Computer System Evaluation Criteria
<b>DOD HDBK-287</b>	Defense System Software Development Handbook
<b>DOD 5000.3-M-3</b>	Software Test and Evaluation Master Plan Outline
<b>MIL-STD-1521B</b>	Technical Reviews and Audits for Systems, Equipments, and Computer Software
<b>MIL-STD-1815A</b>	Ada Programming Language

**Appendix I Applicable Software References**

<b>OMB Cir A-130</b>	Management of Federal Information Resources
<b>Pub Law 89-306</b>	Brooks Bill, Warner-Nunn Amendment and Implementing Directives
<b>IEEE P982/D2.4</b>	"DRAFT" Standard for Measures to Produce Reliable Software
<b>IEEE P982/D5</b>	"DRAFT" Guide for Use of Standard Measures to Produce Reliable Software
<b>AFR 800-14</b>	Life Cycle Management of Computer Resources in Systems
<b>AFSCP 800-43</b>	Software Management Indicators
<b>AFSCP 800-14</b>	Software Quality Indicators
<b>AFSCP 800-45</b>	"DRAFT" Software Risk Abatement
<b>FSCP/AFLCP 800-5</b>	"DRAFT" Software Independent Verification and Validation (IV&V)
<b>ASDP 800-5</b>	Software Development Capability/Capacity Review
<b>ESD-TR-88-001</b>	Software Management Metrics

# INDEX

---

Note: In most cases the acronym is used in this index. See Appendix A for a list of acronyms.

Ada 3-13, 4-4, 4-5, 6-3, 9-3

    Environment 3-16

    Language Features 3-15

    Policy 4-4

    Waiver 4-4

Abstraction 3-15

AFR 800-14 7-7

AFSC/AFLCP 800-5 11-3, 11-4

AIS 4-9

    AIS Policy 4-9

ANSI 4-6

Architecture 9-4

ASCII 3-8

ASD Pamphlet 800.5 8-13

Assembler 3-10

Assembly Language 3-10

Assessing Performance 13-10

ATE 6-2

ATLAS 4-4

Audits 9-7

Avionics 3-3

Baseline

    Allocated 10-6

    Developmental 10-7

    Functional 10-6

    Management 10-6

    Product 10-7

BASIC 4-5

Binary 3-8, 3-10

Bit 3-8

Boolean Logic 3-7

Bottom-up Design 13-6

Brooks Bill 4-1, 4-9

Buss 3-9

CAD/CAM 13-2

Capability and Capacity Review 8-12

Capability Eval Team 8-15

CCB 10-7

CDR 2-9, 5-3, 6-2, 6-7, 6-15, 10-6

CDRL 8-9, 10-3

CE 5-2, 6-1, 7-7, 8-1, 8-4

CET 8-15

Changeability 9-4

CI Selection 10-2

CIDS 8-3

CLINs 8-8

CMP 5-5, 8-7, 10-3

CMS-2 4-4, 4-5

COBOL 3-11, 4-4, 4-5

COCOMO 12-7, 13-7

Coding 5-9

Compiler 3-12

Computer

    Architecture 3-7

    Definition 3-1

    Embedded 3-3, 3-5

    Flight Control 2-5

    Hardware 3-3

    Instrumentation 2-5

    Mission Support 2-6

    Navigation 2-5

- Computer (Continued)
  - Resources 3-4
  - ISA 3-8, 3-9
- Configuration
  - Audit 10-11
  - Control 10-3
  - Control Process 10-9
  - Functional 10-2
  - Physical 10-2
  - Status Accounting 10-10
- Configuration Control Board 10-3
- Configuration Management 3-6, 6-13, 7-10, 10-1
- Configuration Review Board 10-4
- Contracts 8-6
  - Air Force 8-6
  - Evaluating Proposals 8-12
  - Evaluation 8-11
  - Fees 9-4
  - Incentives 9-4
  - Instruction to Offerors 8-7
  - Proposal Evaluation 8-8
- Control Systems 9-5
- Copyright 4-8
- Cost
  - Estimating 8-7, 11-6
  - Hardware 2-3, 2-4
  - IV&V 11-1, 11-7
  - Life Cycle 9-4
  - Post Deployment 2-3, 7-12, 7-7
  - Problems 9-6
  - Software 2-3, 7-2, 7-3, 13-3
  - Software Fixes 6-5
  - Status 12-7
- COTS 8-9
- CPU 3-2
- CRISD 5-11
- CRLCMP 5-5, 7-7, 7-8, 8-3, 8-4, 8-6, 8-7
- CRWG 8-4, 10-5
- CSC 5-5, 6-3, 10-3
  - Integration 12-8
- CSCI 5-5, 5-10, 6-4, 10-2, 10-3, 11-2
- CSOM 5-11
- CSU 5-3, 5-5, 10-3
- Data Analysis Tools 6-14
- Data Reduction Tools 6-14
- Data Rights 4-8, 4-9
- Defense Science Board 4-7
- Demming Philosophy 9-5
- Design
  - Detailed 5-8
- Design (Continued)
  - Metrics 12-10
  - Preliminary 5-7
- Development Model 13-4
- DIDs 8-7, Appendix H
- Documentation 2-9, 3-6, 3-7, 5-8, 5-9, 7-10, 9-2, 9-8
- DOD Directive
  - 3405.1 4-4, 4-5
  - 3405.2 3-17, 4-4
  - 5000.29 4-2, 4-7
  - 5000.3-M-3 6-2
- DOD Instruction
  - 5000.31 4-4
  - 7920 4-9
- DOD-STD
  - 2167A 4-4, 5-1, 5-5, 5-8, 5-11, 8-7, 9-4, 11-6
  - 2168 4-4, 5-14
  - 480A 10-1
  - 5200.28 8-6
- DT&E 6-2, 6-4, 6-10, 11-3
- D/V 5-2, 8-1, 10-2
- ECP 10-4, 12-10
- EEPROM 3-6
- Emulation 6-4
- Engineering Change Proposals 10-4, 12-5
- EPROM 3-6
- Evolutionary Development 9-4, 9-10
- Exception Handling 3-15
- FAR 3-5, 4-9
- FCA 5-4, 10-11
- Feasibility Studies 8-4
- Firmware 3-5, 8-7
- FORTRAN 3-11, 4-4, 4-5
- FQT 11-2
- FQR 5-3, 5-12
- FSD 5-2, 8-1, 8-7, 10-5
- FSM 5-11
- Functional Analysis 5-2
- Generics 3-16
- GFE 9-6
- GFI 9-6
- Gist 9-9
- HOL 3-11, 4-3, 8-4
- Human Factors 3-14
- I/O 3-2
- IC 3-6, 4-6

- ICWG 10-5
- IDD* 5-7
- ILSP 7-8, 8-2, Appendix E
- Incremental Development 9-6, 9-10
- Information Hiding 3-15
- Inspections 9-7
- Instruction Set Architecture 3-8, 3-9, 4-7
- Integrated Circuits 2-2, 3-2, 4-6
- Integration 9-8
  - CSC 12-4
- Interface
  - Controls 9-3, 10-5
  - Definition 8-3
- Interfaces 8-12
- IRS 5-4, 6-2, 8-3, 8-4, 10-6
- ISA 3-8, 3-9, 4-7
- ISO 4-6
- IV&V 6-7, 6-15, 8-5, 8-8, 11-1
  - Levels 11-5
  - Need 11-3
  - Scope 11-4
  - Selecting Agent 11-7
  - Tasks 11-5
- JOVIAL 4-4, 4-5
- Language 3-9, 8-8
  - See also:
    - Ada
    - Atlas
    - Basic
    - C
    - CMS-2
    - COBOL
    - FORTRAN
    - JOVIAL
    - PASCAL
    - SPC/1
    - TACPOL
- License Agreements 4-9
- Localization 3-15
- Machine Language 3-10
- Management
  - Baseline 10-6
  - Checklist 9-11
  - Guidance 13-9
  - Guidelines 9-3, 9-5
  - IV&V 11-1
  - Metrics 12-1
  - Monitor 8-4
- PDSS Guidance 7-11
- Planning 8-1
- Manning 13-6, 13-7
- Margins 9-6
- MCCR 4-1, 4-2
  - Management Steering Committee 4-2
  - Policy 4-3
- Memory 3-3, 8-12, 9-6
- Metrics 8-7, 9-6, 12-1
  - Adjustments and Refinements 12-6
  - Application 12-2
  - Choice 12-5
  - Contract Monitoring 12-6
  - Cost 12-7
  - Delivery Status 12-13
  - Development 12-10
  - Government Model 12-3
  - Management 12-1
  - Manpower 12-8
  - Negotiation 12-5
  - Pre-Solicitation 12-3
  - Process 12-2
  - Process Maturity 12-5
  - Program Manager's 12-6
  - Resource Needs 12-3
  - Resources 12-9
  - RFP/SOW 12-4
  - Size 12-7
  - Types 12-1
  - Quality 12-2
  - Use of Models/Norms 12-6
- Microprocessor 2-2
- MIL-STD
  - 1521B 5-3, 9-7
  - 1750A 3-9, 4-3, 4-7
  - 1815A 4-6, 11-7
  - 483A 10-1, 10-2
  - 882 11-4
- MITRE 8-14
- Models 6-1
- Modularity 3-15, 9-4
- NCSC 8-6
- Noise 6-12
- Object Oriented Design 6-2, 9-3
- Object Oriented Programming 9-3
- OPF 8-8
- OOD 2-7, 5-7, 9-3
- Operating Systems 8-12
- Operational Concept Analysis 5-4

- OPNAVINST 5200.28 7-7  
 Orange Book 8-6  
 OT&E 6-2, 6-4, 6-13, 11-3  
 Packages 3-15  
 PASCAL 4-5  
 Patches 6-16  
 Patent 4-9  
 PCA 5-3, 5-11, 10-11, 12-12  
 PDL 3-17, 6-2, 12-11, 13-8  
 PDR 2-9, 5-3, 5-6, 6-2, 6-7, 6-15, 10-6, 12-10, 13-7  
 PDSS 4-7, 7-15, 8-4  
   Air Force 7-8  
   Army 7-8  
   Concept 8-4  
   Corrections 7-11  
   Distribution of Corrections 7-11  
   Documentation 7-10, 7-11  
   Enhancements 7-10  
   Evaluation of Complaints 7-10  
   Funding 7-9, 7-3  
   Integration Testing 7-10  
   Interoperability Testing 7-10  
   IV&V 7-9  
   JLC Workshop 7-2  
   Location 7-8  
   Management Concerns 7-4  
   Management Guidance 7-11  
   Management perceptions 7-3  
   Marine Corps 7-8  
   Navy 7-8  
   Organization Chain 7-8  
   Policy 7-9  
   Process 7-7  
   Software Environment 7-9  
   Strategy 7-8  
   SW Engineering Change 7-10  
   What is 7-5  
 Peopleware 3-6  
 PIDS 8-3  
 PMP 8-1  
 Problem Reporting 10-8  
 Product Baseline 5-11  
 PROM 3-6  
 Productivity 3-10, 3-13  
 Prototype 5-6, 8-8, 9-6, 9-8, 13-5  
 PSL/PSA 9-8  
  
 Real-time 2-8, 3-2, 9-4  
 Requirements  
   Analysis 5-6  
   Analysis Tools 6-14  
  
 Requirements (Continued)  
   Analysis/Design 5-3  
   Definition 8-3, 9-4, 9-8  
   Refinement 5-4  
   Specification 12-10  
   Testability 9-7  
   Traceability 5-1, 9-2, 9-7  
 Resource Planning 9-3  
 Resources Leverage 9-3  
 Restricted Rights 4-9, 8-9  
 Reuse 8-7, 13-3  
 Reviews 5-2, 9-3, 9-6, 9-7  
 RFP 8-7, 10-3, 12-4  
   Draft 8-9  
 Risk 5-4, 8-4, 8-7, 9-6, 9-7  
 ROM 3-6  
 RSL/EVS 9-8  
  
 SADT 9-9  
 SCE 8-14, 12-5, 12-6  
 Schedule 9-8  
   Problems 9-6  
 Schedules 9-3, 13-8  
 Scheduling 6-3  
 SCM 10-1  
   Audit 10-11  
   Class I 10-4, 10-5  
   Class II 10-4, 10-5  
   Control 10-1  
   Identification 10-1  
   Library 10-10  
   Status Accounting 10-1  
 SCRB 10-7  
 SDCCR 8-12  
   Factors 8-13  
   Team 8-13  
 SDD 5-7  
 SDF 5-8  
 SDP 6-2, 8-6, 8-7, 10-3  
 SDR 5-2, 8-3, 10-2, 10-6  
 Security 8-6  
   Accreditation 8-6  
   Certification 8-6  
 SEI 8-14, 9-5, 4-7  
 SETA 12-4  
 SIF 6-9  
 SIL 6-4, 6-12  
 Simulation 6-11  
 Simulators 6-1  
   Environment 6-11  
   System 6-11

- Sizing 8-7  
 SLOC 12-7, 12-8  
 Software  
     Acquisition Cycle 13-4  
     Productivity 13-1  
 Software Capability Evaluation 8-14  
 Software Development 5-1, 5-4  
 Software Development Folder 10-11  
 Software Development Library 10-10  
 Software Engineering 2-1, 2-7, 3-13, 3-15, 4-6, 5-1, 9-2  
 Software Engineering Institute 4-7  
 Software Errors 6-5  
 SON 11-3  
 Source Program 5-9  
 Source Selection 8-9  
     Source Selection Organization 8-10  
     Special Requirements 8-9  
     SSA 8-6  
     SSAC 8-7  
     SSP 8-6  
 SOW 5-13, 8-2, 8-8  
 Special Interest Items 9-6  
 Specifications  
     C-5 5-11  
     System 5-3  
     Type A 5-4  
 SPL/1 4-5  
 SPM 5-11  
 SPR 12-12  
 SPS 5-11  
 SQPP Appendix H  
 SRR 5-2, 10-6  
 SRS 5-5, 6-2, 8-3, 8-7, 10-6, 11-3, 11-4, 12-11  
 SSA 8-6  
 SSAC 8-11  
 SSDD 8-3  
 SSEB 8-11  
 SSR 5-3, 5-5, 12-10  
 SSS 5-4, 8-3, 8-4, 11-4  
 Standards 2-7, 2-9, 3-9, 4-3, 4-8, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3, 5-5,  
     6-2, 6-4, 6-12, 8-8, 8-14  
 STARS 4-7, 13-2  
 Statement of Need 11-3  
 Static Analysis Tools 6-11  
 STP 5-7, 6-2, 6-13  
 STR 5-11  
 Structured Design 9-2  
 Subcontracts 8-7  
 SUM 5-11  
 Support  
     Organic 8-12  
 Support (Continued)  
     Resources 6-1  
     Studies 8-4  
     Vendor 8-12  
     Facilities 3-7  
 System/Segment Designs 5-3  
 TACPOL 4-4  
 Tailoring 5-12  
 Tasking 3-16  
 Teaming 8-7  
 TEMP 5-3, 6-1, 8-2, 8-5  
 Test 5-9  
     Against Requirements 9-7  
     Black Box 6-8  
     Bottom-Up 6-10  
     Debugging 6-14  
     Desk Checking 6-7  
     Facilities 6-12  
     Formal 5-10  
     Hot Bench 6-4, 6-12  
     Human 6-6  
     Informal 5-10, 6-3  
     Inspections 6-6, 9-2  
     Integration 5-10, 5-12, 6-4, 6-12  
     PDSS 7-10  
     Peer Ratings 6-7  
     Planning 6-1  
     Resources 6-1, 6-12  
     Software Only 6-8  
     Software System 6-8  
     Support 6-1  
     Tools 6-13  
     Top-Down 6-10  
     Types 6-6  
     Walk-Throughs 6-7, 9-2  
     White Box 6-9  
 Testing  
     Formal 11-3  
     Informal 11-3  
 Text Editors 6-14  
 Throughput 3-9, 8-12, 9-6  
 Tools 8-5  
     Debugging 6-14  
     Development 8-12, 9-2, 9-6  
     Specification Development 9-8  
 Top-Down Design 13-5  
 TPS 8-8  
 Trade Secret 4-8  
 Tradeoff & Optimization 8-4  
 Tradeoff and Optimization 5-4

## REPORT DOCUMENTATION PAGE

Form Approved  
OMB No. 0704-0188  
Exp. Date Jun 30, 1986

1a REPORT SECURITY CLASSIFICATION Unclassified		1b RESTRICTIVE MARKINGS	
2a SECURITY CLASSIFICATION AUTHORITY		3 DISTRIBUTION/AVAILABILITY OF REPORT	
2b DECLASSIFICATION/DOWNGRADING SCHEDULE			
4 PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER(S)		5 MONITORING ORGANIZATION REPORT NUMBER(S)	
6a NAME OF PERFORMING ORGANIZATION Defense Systems Management College	6b OFFICE SYMBOL (If applicable) SE-T	7a NAME OF MONITORING ORGANIZATION	
6c ADDRESS (City, State, and ZIP Code) DSMC-SE-T Fort Belvoir, VA 22060-5426		7b ADDRESS (City, State, and ZIP Code)	
8a NAME OF FUNDING/SPONSORING ORGANIZATION Defense Systems Management College	8b OFFICE SYMBOL (If applicable)	9. PROCUREMENT INSTRUMENT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	
8c ADDRESS (City, State, and ZIP Code) DSMC-SE-T Fort Belvoir, VA 22060-5426		10. SOURCE OF FUNDING NUMBERS	
		PROGRAM ELEMENT NO.	PROJECT NO.
		TASK NO.	WORK UNIT ACCESSION NO.
11. TITLE (Include Security Classification) Mission Critical Computer Resources Management Guide (U)			
12. PERSONAL AUTHOR(S) I. Caro, R. Higuera, F. Kockler, S. Jacobson, A. Roberts			
13a TYPE OF REPORT	13b TIME COVERED FROM _____ TO _____	14 DATE OF REPORT (Year, Month, Day)	15 PAGE COUNT 200
16. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTATION			
17. COSATI CODES		18. SUBJECT TERMS (Continue on reverse if necessary and identify by block number)	
FIELD	GROUP	SUB-GROUP	Computers Software Weapon Systems Metrics Software Support S/W Development Cycle
19. ABSTRACT (Continue on reverse if necessary and identify by block number) This document is one of a family of educational guides written from a Department of Defense (DOD) Perspective (i.e., non-service peculiar). These books are intended primarily for use in the courses at the Defense Systems Management College (DSMC) and secondarily as a desk reference for program and project management personnel. The books are written for current and potential DOD Acquisition Managers who have some familiarity with the basic terms and definitions of the acquisition process. It is intended to assist both the Government and industry personnel in executing their management responsibilities relative to the acquisition and support of defense systems. This family of technical guidebooks includes: "Integrated Logistics Support Guide," First Edition, May 1986; "Systems Engineering Management Guide," Second Edition, December 1986; "Department of Defense Manufacturing Management Handbook for Program Managers," Second Edition, July 1984; "Test and Evaluation Management Guide," March 1988; "Acquisition Strategy Guide," First Edition, July 1984; "Subcontracting Management Handbook," First Edition, 1988; "A Program Office Guide to Technology Transfer," November 1988.			
20 DISTRIBUTION/AVAILABILITY OF ABSTRACT <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> UNCLASSIFIED/UNLIMITED <input type="checkbox"/> SAME AS RPT <input type="checkbox"/> DTIC USERS		21 ABSTRACT SECURITY CLASSIFICATION Unclassified	
22a NAME OF RESPONSIBLE INDIVIDUAL Israel I. Caro		22b TELEPHONE (Include Area Code) (703) 664-5198	22c OFFICE SYMBOL SE-T